National bibliography in Saudi Arabia, Egypt and Tunisia: an analytical and comparative study with a view to planning a Saudi Arabian national bibliography

This item was submitted to Loughborough University's Institutional Repository by the/an author.

Additional Information:

• A Doctoral Thesis. Submitted in partial fulfillment of the requirements for the award of Doctor of Philosophy of Loughborough University.

Metadata Record: https://dspace.lboro.ac.uk/2134/6943

Publisher: © Abdullatif Abdullahkoom Samarkandi

Please cite the published version.
This item is held in Loughborough University’s Institutional Repository (https://dspace.lboro.ac.uk/) and was harvested from the British Library’s EThOS service (http://www.ethos.bl.uk/). It is made available under the following Creative Commons Licence conditions.

For the full text of this licence, please go to: http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc-nd/2.5/
IN THE NAME OF ALLAH,
MOST GRACIOUS, MOST MERCIFUL
NATIONAL BIBLIOGRAPHY IN SAUDI ARABIA, EGYPT AND TUNISIA: ANALYTICAL AND COMPARATIVE STUDY WITH A VIEW TO PLANNING A SAUDI ARABIAN NATIONAL BIBLIOGRAPHY

by

ABDULLATIF ABDULHAKEEM SAMARKANDI

A Doctoral Thesis submitted in partial fulfilment of the requirements for the award of the degree of Doctor of Philosophy of Loughborough University of Technology

November 1990

Supervisor: Professor John Feather
Department of Library and Information Studies

© A.A. Samarkandi, 1990
DEDICATION

To my parents,
    for their prayers and good wishes.

To my wife Amna,
    for her endless patience and support

To my children Sundos, Safiyah and Abdullah,
    for their smiles which have brightened nights of lengthy study

* * * * *
ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

First I would like to sincerely thank my supervisor and head of DLIS, Professor John Feather, for his help, guidance and valuable comments, in helping this work see the light. I have gratefully benefited from his methodology and wide experience.

Also I thank Professor A.J. Meadows for his help and kindness when I started this study, and Dr R.P. Sturgess, the Director of Research, for his advice and help in the latter part of the study.

I am grateful to Umm Al-Qura University in the Blessed Makkah for providing the necessary financial support during my research.

My thanks are also due to our sister Bariza for translating of French theses, Terry Paine for advice on points of language and Janet Smith who typed this thesis.
ABSTRACT

Saudi Arabia has, in recent years, experienced a remarkable development in publishing, due to the expansion of education, the encouragement of writers and publications by the government, and the Islamic heritage. In this context, a National Bibliography is a vital ingredient in promoting publications and encouraging their wider use.

The objective of this study is three-fold: to find a model for National Bibliography in the KSA; to consider this proposal in the context of Arab national bibliographies and in the light of broader international aspects.

The method of study involved reading a wide range of works on the subject, including papers and conference documents as well as books. Interviews were conducted with individuals and organisations connected with the subject. Description and analysis of works in Saudi Arabia, Egypt and Tunisia were made according to the following plan: publisher; need and aim; scope of coverage (period, subject, type and number); organisation; bibliographical description; and depository law.

Most of the bibliographic works produced in the KSA have been for specific purposes, appearing at different periods and often overlapping. They cannot themselves be regarded as a retrospective national bibliography but could be useful in producing one.
Egypt and Tunisia are chosen for study as both have experienced similar problems to the KSA and both have a tradition of regular national bibliography. In both countries, the National Library produces the National Bibliography. Their experiences are considered useful for positive adoption of successful features and avoidance of shortcomings in setting up a Saudi National Bibliography.

In addition, a wider examination of Arab Bibliography and international definitions and practices has been made. Deposition law, as a vital feature of successful bibliography production, has also been considered for the main countries studied and for others.

The National Library of Saudi Arabia should be the body to publish the prospective National Bibliography, benefiting from the examples given above. Recommendations are made for the administration and working of the New Bibliography.

**KEYWORDS:**

National Bibliography
Bibliography
Saudi Arabia
Egypt
Tunisia
# TABLE OF CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dedication</td>
<td>i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Certificate of Originality</td>
<td>ii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acknowledgements</td>
<td>iii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abstract</td>
<td>iv</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table of Contents</td>
<td>vi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>List of Tables</td>
<td>xiii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acronyms</td>
<td>xviii</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## CHAPTER 1: INTRODUCTION

1.1 Significance of the Study ..... 1
1.2 Objective of the Study ..... 4
1.3 Data Selection ..... 4
1.4 Method of Analysis ..... 5
1.5 Literature Review ..... 6
1.6 Study Trip

1.6.1 Saudi Arabia

1.6.1.1 Ministry of Information .. 17
1.6.1.2 National Library ..... 17
1.6.1.3 Publishing Houses ..... 18
1.6.1.4 Government Publishing ..... 19
1.6.1.5 Three Layers of Society: 

Clerics, Publishers, Authors ..... 19

1.6.1.5.1 The clerics ..... 19
1.6.1.5.2 The publishers ..... 20
1.6.1.5.3 The authors ..... 20

1.6.2 Egypt and Tunisia ..... 20

1.7 Outline of the Thesis ..... 21
References ..... 23

## CHAPTER 2: NATIONAL BIBLIOGRAPHY

Introduction ..... 24
2.1 Categorization of Bibliography ..... 25
2.2 National Bibliography Definition ..... 26
2.3 Significance of National Bibliography ..... 28
3.6.5 The 1402H (1982 AD) Law ........ 78
Summary ..................................... 83
References ................................... 84

CHAPTER 4: ARAB BULLETIN OF PUBLICATIONS ........ 89
Introduction .................................. 89
4.1 Objectives .................................. 89
4.2 Content and Organisation of the Bulletin .... 90
4.3 Method of Publication ......................... 91
4.4 Survey ....................................... 91
4.4.1 The Objectives of this Study .............. 91
4.4.2 Bulletins of 1979 and 1984 .................. 92
Summary ........................................ 97
References ...................................... 98
Tables .......................................... 99

CHAPTER 5: THE EGYPTIAN NATIONAL BIBLIOGRAPHY .... 103
5.1 History of Bibliography in Egypt .............. 103
5.2 Publisher .................................... 105
5.3 Need and Aim .................................. 106
5.4 Scope of Coverage .............................. 106
5.4.1 Period of Coverage ......................... 106
5.4.2 Subject Coverage ............................ 106
5.4.3 Types of Coverage ......................... 111
5.5 Organisation .................................. 111
5.6 Bibliographical Entries ......................... 113
5.7 Bibliographical Description .................... 113
5.8 Observations .................................. 114
5.9 Depository Law in Egypt ....................... 116
5.10 Study ........................................ 122
5.10.1 Choosing Samples ......................... 122
5.10.2 The Reason for the Choice of these Two Specific Periods .... 122
5.10.3 Why Quarterly and Not Annual ............ 123
CHAPTER 6:  TUNISIAN NATIONAL BIBLIOGRAPHY  
6.1 History of Bibliography in Tunis  
6.2 Publisher  
6.3 Need and Aim  
6.4 Scope of Coverage  
6.4.1 Period of Coverage  
6.4.2 Subject Coverage  
6.4.3 Types of Coverage  
6.5 Organisation  
6.6 Bibliographical Description  
6.7 List of the National Book House  
6.7.1 Periodicals  
6.7.2 Catalogues  
6.7.3 African Studies  
6.7.4 The International Exchange Bulletin of the National Book House  
6.7.5 Guide to Documentation and Library Units  
6.7.6 Catalogue of Periodicals  
6.7.7 Arab Bulletin of Publications  
6.8 Depository Law in Tunisia  
6.9 Study  
6.9.1 Choosing a Sample  
6.9.2 Justification of Choice  
6.9.3 Why Annual and Not Quarterly
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6.9.4 Reasons for Using ISBD and ISBN in the Study</td>
<td>171</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.9.5 Methodology</td>
<td>171</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.10 Observations</td>
<td>172</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Summary</td>
<td>176</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>References</td>
<td>178</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tables</td>
<td>179</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Samples</td>
<td>187</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHAPTER 7: NATIONAL BIBLIOGRAPHY IN THE KSA</td>
<td>190</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduction</td>
<td>190</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.1 Authors</td>
<td>192</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.2 Need and Aim</td>
<td>194</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.3 Scope of Coverage</td>
<td>195</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.3.1 Period of Coverage</td>
<td>196</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.3.2 Number Coverage</td>
<td>199</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.3.3 Subject Coverage</td>
<td>200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.3.4 Types of Coverage</td>
<td>200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.3.5 Numerical Coverage of Books Produced at Home and Abroad</td>
<td>201</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.4 References</td>
<td>203</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.5 The Bibliographical Description</td>
<td>203</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.6 Organisation</td>
<td>206</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Summary</td>
<td>208</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>References and Biographies</td>
<td>210</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tables</td>
<td>214</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHAPTER 8: COMPARISON AND CONTRAST</td>
<td>224</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.1 Prelude</td>
<td>224</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.2 Differences in Bibliography in Egypt, Tunisia and KSA</td>
<td>227</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.2.1 Publisher</td>
<td>227</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.2.2 Occasions and Frequency of Publication</td>
<td>228</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.2.3 Period of Coverage</td>
<td>230</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section</td>
<td>Page No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.2.4 Types of Coverage</td>
<td>232</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.2.5 Numbers of Books Covered</td>
<td>232</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.2.6 Bibliographical Description</td>
<td>233</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.2.7 Organisation</td>
<td>235</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.2.8 Deposit Law</td>
<td>235</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.3 Similarities in Bibliography in Egypt,</td>
<td>238</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tunisia and KSA</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.3.1 Publisher</td>
<td>238</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.3.2 Geographical Coverage</td>
<td>238</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.3.3 Types of Coverage</td>
<td>240</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.3.4 Subject Coverage</td>
<td>240</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.3.5 Bibliographical Description</td>
<td>241</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.3.6 Organisation</td>
<td>241</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Summary</td>
<td>243</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>References</td>
<td>247</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Samples</td>
<td>249</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter 9: Summary and Recommendations</td>
<td>251</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.1 Summary</td>
<td>251</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.2 Recommendations</td>
<td>255</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.2.1 National Library</td>
<td>255</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.2.2 National Bibliography</td>
<td>255</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.2.3 Deposit Law</td>
<td>259</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.2.4 Coverage</td>
<td>264</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.2.5 Organisation</td>
<td>266</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.2.6 Publication</td>
<td>271</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.2.7 Administrative Framework</td>
<td>275</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>References</td>
<td>281</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>References</td>
<td>284</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

** xi **
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table No</th>
<th>Page No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2.1</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1</td>
<td>62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2</td>
<td>64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.4</td>
<td>67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.5</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.6</td>
<td>72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.7</td>
<td>73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.8</td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.1</td>
<td>99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.2</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.3</td>
<td>101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.4</td>
<td>102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.1</td>
<td>106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table No</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.2</td>
<td>Publications in Egypt 1897-1901</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.3</td>
<td>Published Arabic Egyptian books from 1955-1986 all parts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.4</td>
<td>Published Arabic Egyptian books from 1955-1986 (main part)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.5</td>
<td>Published Arabic and English Egyptian books to years 1987-88 all parts (from Legal Deposit Department)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.6</td>
<td>Books for children and young people and school books</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.7</td>
<td>Government publications</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.8</td>
<td>Published Egyptian books (the English part from 1961-79)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.9</td>
<td>Published Egyptian books (the English part from 1980-86)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.10</td>
<td>Bibliographic information in the main section (Arabic)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.11</td>
<td>Bibliographical information in the childrens and school book section (Arabic)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.12</td>
<td>Bibliographical information in the main section and school book section (non-Arabic)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.13</td>
<td>Time distribution of publications according to each section</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table No</td>
<td>Title</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.14</td>
<td>Place distribution of publications in each section</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.15</td>
<td>Bibliographic information in main section (Arabic)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.16</td>
<td>Bibliographical information in the school and children's book section</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.17</td>
<td>Bibliographical information in the Government publications and non-Arabic books section</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.18</td>
<td>The years of distribution of publications in each section</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.19</td>
<td>The place of distribution of publications in each section</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.1</td>
<td>Copies of books deposited in the National Book House and listed in the National Bibliography from 1970 to 1975</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.2</td>
<td>General distribution of items deposited in the House between 1976 and 1986</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.3</td>
<td>Academic publications, school and children's books, and theses deposited in the House in 1987</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.4</td>
<td>Stages of the depository law in Tunisia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.5</td>
<td>Contents of the Arabic part main-children-school</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table No</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.6</td>
<td>Data available in non-official publications in the foreign part</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.7</td>
<td>Data available in official publications in the foreign and Arabic parts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.8</td>
<td>Time distribution of publications according to each section</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.9</td>
<td>Place distribution of publications according to each section</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.1</td>
<td>Total production of books shown in all the works</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.2</td>
<td>Distribution of books in Anani and Sa'ati</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.3</td>
<td>Books corresponding in both works</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.4</td>
<td>Books mentioned either in Anani only or in Sa'ati only</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.5</td>
<td>Place of printing and publishing as shown in Anani's catalogue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.6</td>
<td>Place of publication in the KSA in Anani's catalogue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.7</td>
<td>Books printed outside the KSA in Anani's catalogue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.8</td>
<td>Books published and printed inside the KSA in Sa'ati's writing and publishing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table No</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.9</td>
<td>Books published outside the KSA in Sa'ati's writing and publishing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.10</td>
<td>Books printed and published within the KSA in Sa'ati's &quot;Arabic ...&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.11</td>
<td>Books printed and published outside the KSA in Sa'ati's &quot;Arabic ...&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.12</td>
<td>Geographical distribution of books published outside the KSA in Anani's bibliographical study</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.13</td>
<td>Geographical distribution of books published within the KSA in Anani's bibliographical study</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.14</td>
<td>Books published inside the KSA in Sa'ati's &quot;References ...&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.15</td>
<td>Books published outside the KSA in Sa'ati's &quot;References ...&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACRONYMS</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ABP</td>
<td>Arab Bulletin of Publications</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALECSO</td>
<td>Arab Educational Cultural Scientific Organisation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BDA</td>
<td>Bibliographie de Algerie</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BEP</td>
<td>Bulletin of Egyptian Publications</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BNB</td>
<td>British National Bibliography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BNM</td>
<td>Bibliographie National Morocaine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CDU</td>
<td>Classification Decimale Universelle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DDC</td>
<td>Dewey Decimal Classification</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENB</td>
<td>Egyptian National Bibliography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENL</td>
<td>Egyptian National Library</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IMISIU</td>
<td>Imam Mohammad Ibn Saud Islamic University</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INCB</td>
<td>International Congress on National Bibliographies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISBD</td>
<td>International Standard of Bibliographical Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISBN</td>
<td>International Standard Book Number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IU</td>
<td>Islamic University</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KAU</td>
<td>King Abdul Aziz University</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KFCRIS</td>
<td>King Faisal Centre for Research and Islamic Studies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KFNL</td>
<td>King Fahd National Library</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KFU</td>
<td>King Faisal University</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KFUPM</td>
<td>King Fahd University of Petroleum and Minerals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KSA</td>
<td>Kingdom of Saudi Arabia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KSU</td>
<td>King Saud University</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDB</td>
<td>Legal Deposit Bulletin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LNB</td>
<td>Libyan National Bibliography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NB</td>
<td>National Bibliography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NBH</td>
<td>National Book House</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NL</td>
<td>National Library</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RNB</td>
<td>Retrospective National Bibliography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SASCA</td>
<td>Saudi Arabian Society for Culture and Arts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SNB</td>
<td>Syrian National Bibliography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TNB</td>
<td>Tunisian National Bibliography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UAQU</td>
<td>Umm Al-Qura University</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
UBC Universal Bibliographic Control
UAP Universal Availability of Publications
MARC National Machine Readable Cataloguing Programme
UBCIM Universal Bibliographic Control and Information Management
KACST King Abdul Aziz City for Science and Technology
CIP Cataloguing in Publication

**DDC NUMBERS**

000 Generalities
100 Philosophy and Psychology
200 Religions (Islamic studies)
300 Social sciences
400 Languages
500 Pure sciences
600 Applied sciences (technology)
700 The Arts
800 Literature
900 Geography, Biographies and History
CHAPTER 1
INTRODUCTION

1.1 SIGNIFICANCE OF THE STUDY

The Kingdom of Saudi Arabia has, over the past years, experienced a remarkable development in publishing. The development is due to many reasons, one of which is the expansion of education in its different stages ranging from primary to tertiary levels. This expansion has stimulated the writing and publishing of many books in science and other academic disciplines.

Another reason is the Islamic heritage, particularly the presence of the two Holy Shrines of Islam: Al-Haram Mosque in Makkah (where the Blessed Ka'aba is situated in the direction of which Muslims all over the world pray); also the Prophet's Mosque in AL-Madina AL-Monawarah, which Muslims are recommended to visit. This has also given rise to the publication of Islamic works so as to make them accessible to many readers.

The establishment of printing and publishing companies has played an important part in enriching Saudi intellectual activity. If we were to go through the history of printing in the KSA we would find that the first printing office was founded in 1300H (1883 AD) in Makkah by the government of that time, to be used for the printing of official documents. The first private printing company was founded in 1327H (1909 AD). Afterwards many other printing companies were successfully
established. This factor has helped in the publication of many works. In recent years the number of publishing companies has been on the increase in different cities and towns of the KSA but is concentrated especially in Riyadh, Jeddah, Makkah, Al-Damman and Taif (see Chapter 3). This development has resulted in an ever increasing production of published material which has called for it to be listed and put within the reach of researchers and of students in and out of the KSA. It is also necessary to make it available for acquisition by libraries and related services.

There have been some valuable attempts to collate published material in the KSA (see Chapter 7). Those works are the fruits of individual efforts but cannot be verified as to their accuracy and comprehensiveness. It should be mentioned that these works met the limited needs of certain researchers, but due to recent development, current needs are no longer satisfied. This situation has prompted the researcher to attempt to produce guidelines for a National Bibliography in the KSA with the aim of making the published material accessible to those concerned inside and outside the KSA.

We must also view such guidelines in the wider context of international bibliography because Saudi intellectual production should eventually be available when required in a worldwide basis. The concept of international bibliography is documented as far back as 1877 in the UK [1], but since the 1960's it has received enormous attention in the library world.
In a 1958 symposium [2] the responsibility of a national library in the conservation of published materials and the provision of bibliographic services in its own country is emphasised. Chaplin and Anderson [3] in their report on the Copenhagen meeting of cataloguing experts in 1969 noted the necessity of standard bibliographical description by a national agency as a prerequisite of an effective international system. It was these discussions and meetings which led to the formulation of the concept of Universal Bibliographic Control (UBC).

The following statement originates from a UNESCO conference in 1974 [4]:

"Universal Bibliographic Control will be promoted by UNESCO, in cooperation with IFLA, as a major policy objective to create a worldwide system for the control and exchange of information. The success of the programme for Universal Bibliographic Control depends on efficient National Bibliographic Control (cf objective 12). UNESCO will, therefore, organise meetings and promote studies on problems connected with Universal Bibliographic Control, and as a first step will evaluate the existing national bibliographic services to establish a basis for future action".

These ideas and principles have been reiterated and modified throughout many decades. The vital significance of these efforts towards UBC have been noted in relation to the SNB and the recommendations to be made for its implementation.
1.2 OBJECTIVE OF THE STUDY

The objective of this study is three-fold:

1. To find a model for National Bibliography in the KSA.

2. To consider this proposal in the context of national bibliographies in the Arab world.

3. To consider the proposal in the light of broader international aspects.

1.3 DATA SELECTION

A thorough description of the National Bibliographies in Egypt and Tunisia is provided in order to compare them with the recommended one in the KSA. The reasons for choosing Egypt and Tunisia are:

1. Both are developing Muslim Arab countries.

2. Both countries have experienced similar bibliographical and library problems to those the Kingdom is facing today.

3. Both countries have a tradition in publishing regular National Bibliographies; compared with other Arab countries. Egypt has the oldest national bibliography in the Arab world and Tunisia the most modern.
4. Because Tunisia is the home of ALECSO it is very much involved in international bibliographic matters.

5. Both countries have connections with European culture and therefore should be influenced by European library and bibliographic practices.


1.4 METHOD OF ANALYSIS
The approach adopted here is threefold:

1. Reading the works related to the subject. This meant to read all works written on this subject, particularly connected with the Kingdom, Tunisia and Egypt, where publications were in Arabic. The researcher also had to read what was published outside these three countries, including publications by prominent authors, conferences and relevant international institutions. Publications were not confined to books but included papers, conference documents and the like.

2. Description and analysis of bibliographical works in Saudi Arabia, Egypt and Tunisia based on a fixed plan which comprises the following:
   (1) publisher
   (2) need and aim
(3) scope of coverage:
   a. period of coverage
   b. subject coverage
   c. types of coverage
   d. number coverage

(4) organisation

(5) bibliographical description

(6) depository law

3. Conducting interviews:

   A. with the people concerned with the publication of national bibliographies in Egypt and Tunisia, especially those working in the national Libraries. The aim was to consider closely their achievements in the field.

   B. with a number of publishers, governmental establishments in Saudi Arabia relevant to national bibliography, officials and those interested in the field. This was on the one hand to consider their relation with the subject and to ask them their opinion about future plans, and on the other because they are closely involved in the subject.

1.5 LITERATURE REVIEW

There is an enormous amount of general literature on national bibliography and bibliographic control. Many such articles have been examined and incorporated in the body of the thesis where appropriate. There is also a number of works which deal with Arab bibliography in general and with those of particular Arab countries.
INTERNATIONAL REVIEWS

1. In the international context the 1982 publication *UBC: A Survey of Universal Bibliographic Control* by Dorothy Anderson, London, IFLA International Office for UBC, 1982. This is in itself an excellent review of the above subject citing and quoting from a large number of different publications.

2. There are a number of interesting articles, including references to the international scene in *Eating the Menus, Essays in Honour of Peter Lewis*, Ed. by Ross Bourne, London, The British Library, 1989.

   This publication represents a very useful group of up-to-date essays by practitioners and thinkers in this field.

3. The regular conferences held by IFLA and other bodies present a variety of approaches to the subject of national and international bibliography and the more modern ones put considerable emphasis on computerised systems.

Arab World


   This work was prepared as a Master's thesis submitted to the Department of Library Science, Cairo University in 1980. The
purpose of this study was to find out what the real state of the Arab Bulletin of Publications was as a current national bibliography for the Arab countries. This study appeared in six chapters covering the author's description and analysis of the Arab Bulletin of Publications from 1970 to 1976. The first chapter deals with the definition of national bibliography. The second chapter is concerned with the need for and aim of a national bibliography. Chapter 3 studies the extent of coverage. Chapter 4 deals with the results of the study which includes the degree of coverage in the Arab Bulletin of Publications. The fifth chapter studies the Authoritative Bibliographic Record. Chapter 6 examines the organisation and issue of the Arab Bulletin of Publications. The study concludes with recommendations (for future research and study to be implemented immediately).

5. La Bibliographie Nationale de Tunisie, Historique et évolution, Memoire de fin d'étude en DBA. Presente par: Jelila Tabanne-Ayari, 1984, 122p. MA.

An extended study by Jalila Tabbane-Ayari (1984) was presented in three main parts. Part one concerns itself with concise definitions of different types of national bibliographies (current, retrospective...). The author goes on to identify the necessary elements for the establishment of a national bibliography and the different sources from which this publication receives the material such as the legal deposit. In Part two she provides a critical study of the Tunisian national bibliography and traces the problems faced by it.
Finally the author assesses the Tunisian National Bibliography in the light of international requirements such as exhaustivity, scope, content etc. She identifies three major areas that are in need of investigation: exhaustivity, scope and content. She concludes with a number of recommendations for the improvement of the publication.


Al-Rabbi has traced the history of the National Library of Tunisia back to the days of French occupation of the country. He identified the sources and channels through which this library acquires its publications. He brought to light the organisation of the Tunisian National Bibliography, both current and retrospective. The author based his study on the recommendations of the 1977 International Congress in Bibliographic Control and the 1982 Paris Congress.

He too found that the National Bibliography of Tunisia has many shortcomings relating to content, scope and exhaustivity. He concluded his study with 21 recommendations in accordance with the Tunisian Conseil national d'édition recommendations for the establishment of a national bibliography.
Saudi Arabia

7. Mahmood Qari Jan's MA thesis entitled "Planning for the Compilation of the Current Bibliography in the Kingdom of Saudi Arabia" presented to the Library and Information Department, the Faculty of Arts and Humanities at King Abdulaziz University (KAU), Jeddah, 1984.

The thesis is a review of the current National Bibliographies in Britain, France and Egypt. The approach the author adopted is mainly based on an historical development of the bibliographies with no comparative analysis. He mentions in the introduction some bibliographical tools and he concludes with a general view of Saudi bibliography.

8. Abdullatif Samarkandi's MA thesis entitled "The Tools of Retrospective Bibliography in the Kingdom of Saudi Arabia: An Analytical Study", presented to the Library and Information Department, the Faculty of Arts and Humanities, KAU, Jeddah, 1984.

The researcher put emphasis in this work on the description and analysis of bibliographical tools available in the KSA. He concluded the thesis with a view of what form a retrospective national bibliography should have.

This study has concentrated on Saudi periodicals to analyse the number and quality of such publications that are issued in the Kingdom of Saudi Arabia.

The first chapter deals with the definition and concept of a periodical. The second chapter is concerned with the evolution and growth of Saudi periodicals during the period from 1882 to 1979. Chapter 3 studies the number and quality of those periodicals. The researcher found that there is a strong relation between educational and economic factors and the contents of the periodicals. The fourth chapter deals with the major characteristics of Saudi periodicals during past periods. The fifth chapter studies the major bibliographical tools such as Arabic Periodicals, Directory of Current Arabic Periodicals, Union List of Arabic Periodicals, Annual Index of Umm Al-Qura, Abstracts of Scientific Research etc, to show that these tools are ineffective. The study concludes with recommendations for improvement.


This research deals with the study of bibliographical control of government publications in Saudi Arabia, and is designed to trace the evolution and growth of government publications from 1924 to 1974, examine the procedures involved in the printing and
distribution of government publications in the Kingdom, and evaluate the available bibliographical tools for government publications.

The study showed that the existing bibliography catalogues and lists are incomplete and ineffective. The researcher made several recommendations for the production, printing, distribution and bibliographical control of government publications.


This work was prepared as a doctor's thesis submitted to the Department of Library Science, Cairo University in 1984. This dissertation studied government publications and their bibliographic control in Saudi Arabia for a period over a century from 1882 to 1983. In order to study this topic, an empirical bibliographic list was built using 24 bibliographic sources; including studies, catalogues, and other bibliographic works. More publications, not found in these sources, were also added by the researcher to make this list more complete so as to cover as much material as possible. This study appeared in 9 chapters, in addition to the bibliographic list.

12. The guide to academic theses in Saudi Arabia, planned and supervised by Dr Zaid Ibn Abdul Muhsin Al-hussan. King Faisal Centre for Research and Islamic Studies (KFCRIS), 1st ed. 1410H (1990 AD). The Guide is a large one containing 382 pages, 234 of
which are devoted to academic theses. The rest are indexes of authors, revised items, universities, faculties and departments and indexes of subjects.

The guide, as the compiler mentions in the introduction, aims to cover theses of a high intellectual standard and introduce them to researchers and postgraduate students, and to promote the academic research movement in the KSA. The guide includes Master and Doctoral theses and complementary research works which were completed and submitted to Saudi Universities and other institutions. These are in Arabic and other languages. Thus they have an Arabic translation of titles. For example there are faculty of science theses.

The guide does not include theses from King Fahd University of Petroleum and Minerals (KFUPM), firstly because they arrived late, secondly because the titles are in English only. The introduction mentions that there is a separate appendix to be published in this respect.

The number of theses covered in the guide was 3368, from the first theses in 1389H (1968 AD) to 1409H (1989 AD). They were alphabetically ordered as in the guide in KFCRIS, according to their subjects and subject headings. The guide uses the ISBN and gives information on how to use it on pages 11-13. The indexes are ordered alphabetically according to the authors' first names. The thesis information includes the title, name of the author, degree, University or faculty name, year and series number. The
guide does not give any abstract or summary of theses nor does it mention in the appendix the bibliographic rules for academic theses. These rules regulate the subscription at three levels on which the subscriber would receive facilities according to his terms of subscription: full, particular or unlimited. Although the publishing body is not specialised in bibliography, the guide is regarded as a considerable step forward in promoting academic theses which have remained confined to the library shelves. The user of the guide will know about the subjects which have been discussed in academic theses.

13. Index of Masters Theses and Doctoral Dissertations of Saudi Graduates from Universities in the USA. Royal Embassy of Saudi Arabia, Cultural Attache to the USA, 1410H (1990 AD).

The 294 page index is a large one, giving a two page introduction in Arabic and one page table of contents. It has no indexes of any kind. The index, as mentioned in the introduction, aims to make theses available so that they are scrutinised and studied because scientific research would not be complete without criticism. With this objective in mind the compiler lists students' contributions in the USA universities in this index. It includes the theses of MA and PhD written by Saudi students in American universities, all of which are in English. The number of theses listed in the index is 2628 from when Saudi students started going to American universities to the present.
The theses are ordered alphabetically according to subject and then according to the last name of the student. The items of information are name of researcher, title of thesis, degree, year, number of pages, and series number. A number of theses do not have date of submission; none of them have the name of the University. In addition to the serial number each card is numbered separately. I believe that this number is used only by the issuing body as the introduction does not mention the number. The compilation of this index is a good initiative in promoting students' contributions through their academic theses as an indirect publishing channel, although it does not have the basic elements of indexing, such as a detailed introduction of the index content in addition to indexes such as those of authors, subjects, and titles. Also it does not apply any laws on the description cards such as the ISBD. It should, however, be encouraged as a first step towards other more explicit and accurate indexes that may follow.

There are many other works which have deal with certain aspects of bibliographic control of books in the Kingdom, among these Abdul-Sattar Al-halwaj's article "Towards a National Bibliography in the Kingdom of Saudi Arabia", published by Al-dara Magazine in January 1978.

There is also a paper entitled "Current Saudi Book Industry" by Abbas Saleh Tashkandi published in The Economics and Administration Magazine issue 11, July 1980. This article reviews a number of bibliographical works, such as Mujam Al-Matbu'at Al-saudiah (Catalogue of Saudi
Publications) by Shukri Al-Anani and "Harakat Al-ta'lis wa Al-nashr fi Al'Mamlakah Al-Arabiah Al-Saudiah, (Writing and Publishing Movement in the KSA) by Yahya Sa'ati.

Yahya Sa'ati published another article in Al-Riyadh Daily issue 3524, 15-1-1397; 5-1-1977, in which he gives some critical remarks on Al'Annani's Catalogue.

Naser Muhammad Al-Sawidan also published an article on Ali Jawad Al-tahir's work in Al-Riyadh Daily, issue 5422; 22-8-1403H; 3-6-1983.

Saud Abdullah Al-hizamy wrote an article on the reality of bibliographical control in the Kingdom and the tools available to control publications. He includes in this article a list of local bibliographical works in the Kingdom. He also suggests the compilation of a national bibliography. This article appeared in the Administration Library Magazine 1404; February (1984).

The significance of this present work then is to complete the previous ones. It aims to provide a general framework for the establishment of a Saudi National Bibliography.

Although there have been an MA thesis (5) and a PhD thesis (6) on the Tunisian national bibliography, in French, this is the first thesis to examine, compare and analyse bibliography in three Arab countries.
1.6 STUDY TRIP

The researcher spent three months (8 March to 7 May 1989) on a study visit to KSA, Egypt and Tunisia.

In Saudi Arabia, a number of cities were visited but Riyadh had special attention. In Egypt and Tunisia on the other hand visits were paid to the National Book Houses in the capital cities only. The researcher tried to go through the development phases of the bibliography in both countries to reap the benefit of their experience and avoid any potential problems when planning a Saudi National Bibliography. The main notes made on the visits are as follows:

1.6.1 Saudi Arabia

1.6.1.1 Ministry of Information

- The system of 1982 (Chapter 3.6.5) has been enacted but most of its items are ineffective.
- There is no cooperation between the Ministry of Information and the National Library.
- All the publishing houses do is present the book to the publication administration and wait until permission is issued in accordance with the system and regulations in force in the KSA. Thus the responsibility for depositing the required copies is lost between the publisher, the printer and the distributor, as if the publication system did not apply; the reason is that the publication administration in the Ministry of Information is alone responsible for all material printed in the KSA.
- The publishers give six copies to the distribution department; some to keep and some to further distribute.
- The Ministry's role is confined to checking the publications. As for the role of the National Library, it has been mentioned in the article as "any other institution of a controlling nature" only for future applications.

1.6.1.2 National Library
- The National Library is not accounted for in the sections of the publication system pertaining to depositing the required copies.
- The National Library works separately from the other related institutions.
- There is no relationship between the National Library, the author, the publisher and the distributor.
- Deposition is carried out either by the publisher donating copies of the book, or by the National Library purchasing copies. Both practices ceased more than two years ago. If anyone dedicates any copies, they receive a written letter of thanks.
- The National Library is not concerned with publications by Saudi authors abroad.
- The Government institutions and the Universities do not provide the National Library with any copies.
- The National Library has one register listing all the contents and the relevant bibliographical data.
- The National Library does not have any special depository system.
- The affiliation of the National Library to the Ministry of Education was due to the fact that the Ministry was the only body in charge of cultural affairs and also due to the relationship between books and education.
1.6.1.3 Publishing Houses
- The National Library has no source of copies except the six copies deposited with the publication administration which has no relationship with the National Library.

- The Government institutions are not provided with any free copies. They are given a list of publications only on request.

- There is no verification whether or not the National Library is provided with the free required copies although this is explicitly mentioned in the article of the publications regulating system.

1.6.1.4 Government Publishing
- These institutions issue many publications in different disciplines, but their relationship with the National Library is non-existent. Worse, in some cases they do not even know that there is a National Library in Riyadh.

1.6.1.5 Three Layers of Society: Clerics, Publishers, Authors
Three groups belonging to different orders of society were consulted as to the legitimacy of deposition.

1.6.1.5.1 The Clerics
To know the Islamic law's position towards the required free copies. They answered that it is permitted, since the reason is not just for keeping them but to serve the benefit of the publisher who gives the copies. As the benefit is greater than the loss Islam allows the system.
1.6.1.5.2 The Publishers
To know who is, or should be responsible for deposition and should publications deposited be free or sold to the National Library. They unanimously agreed that responsibility lies with the publishers since they benefit most from the system and they are usually more reliable and responsible. As to the number of required copies, they believe that more than five would cause the National Library to deviate from the role for which it was established.

1.6.1.5.3 The Authors
They also agreed unanimously that the benefit to the publisher is greater than to the printer and author and he should be responsible for deposition. He benefits from introducing and promoting his production in international circles when a National Bibliography is published. They also agreed on five as a reasonable number.

1.6.2 Egypt and Tunisia
To report on the status of national bibliography in Egypt and Tunisia, the following steps were taken:
- Following up the historical development of the National Bibliographies in both countries from when they were first published until now, which required the researcher to visit the National Library in each country and check each bibliography.
- Learning about the extent of the amendments introduced by the new laws and systems as new requirements emerged. This was learned through tracing the bibliographies from the first appearance to the present.
- Covering the statistics of intellectual work since the first issue of the bibliography until the time of the visit. Since quick facilities were unavailable regarding this subject, the researcher had to find the necessary data directly from the bibliographies.
- Covering the new depository laws considering their appropriateness to the Egyptian and Tunisian book production.
- Selecting samples of the current bibliographies in both countries.
- Looking for previous works relevant to the subject.

This is a study and comparison of the quality of national bibliography in the two countries, not to use them as a direct model, but as a guide to what should be the model for the Saudi National Bibliography. By "guide" we mean to avoid the errors of the bibliographies studied as well as to follow their successes.

1.7 OUTLINE OF THE THESIS

The first chapter of this study covers the introduction which includes significance of the study, objective of the study, data for selection, method of analysis, literature review, and study trip. In Chapter Two there is a brief study of the National Bibliography, the definitions by European and Muslim Arab scholars, then the significance, value and types of National Bibliography. Then there is a summary of National Bibliography in the Arab world and historical review of depository law and models in certain countries. Chapter Three deals with the History of Printing and Publishing in the KSA.
- The history of printing through three stages: the Ottoman, Hashemite and Saud eras.
- Review of the historical development of and laws pertaining to printing and publishing in the KSA.
- Outlines of printing and publishing systems up to 1982.
- A short consideration is given to publishing and distributing books.

The fourth chapter is concerned with the Arab Bulletin of Publications. It discusses the objectives of its publication and organisation by a brief study of two issues of the bulletin and also the reason for this study is explained. Chapter Five is a study of the ENB in terms of history of Bibliography, editing, need and aim, scope of coverage (period, subject and types of coverage), organisation, bibliographical entries and description, observations, legal depository law, and analysis of a part of ENB "bibliographical description" (Study 1 and Study 2). Chapter Six is concerned with the National Bibliography in Tunisia. A similar study and analysis of the TNB has been followed as that of the ENB. Bibliographical works in the KSA are examined in Chapter Seven. This chapter analyses tools of bibliography in terms of the following points: author, need and aim, scope of coverage (period, subject, types, and numerical coverage of books produced at home and abroad), references, bibliographical description and organisation. Chapter Eight is a comparison between the three countries bringing out the following points: differences and similarities in bibliography in Egypt, Tunisia and Saudi Arabia. Chapter Nine contains summary and recommendations.
REFERENCES


The word bibliography is said to be originally derived from the Greek with the meaning writing or copying books [1]. It was used in France for the first time by Gabried Naude, Secretary and Librarian to Cardinal Richelieu, for his "Bibliographia Politica" [2]. Many definitions have been given to the art of bibliography since the invention of printing. The Oxford Dictionary [3] for instance has given four meanings; the writing of books, the history and systematic description of books and the listing of their authorship, printing, publication and edition; a book containing such details; a list of the books of a particular author, printer or country. George Schneider [4] defined bibliography as constituting a branch of the science of books. The new Encyclopaedia Britannica [5] considers it as study and description of books, and the Encyclopaedia of Islam [6] states that "The word is used in the sense of a systematically arranged list of books......".

As will be noticed, the definitions quoted above differ from one person to another and from one period to another.
2.1 CATEGORIZATION OF BIBLIOGRAPHY

Stokes [7] defines bibliography as "the study of books as material objects". His categorisation of bibliography is associated with the activities performed by a bibliography. The most important one concerns itself with the intellectual content of the book and the author calls it "intellectual bibliography"; the second activity to which the term bibliography is attached is the concentration on the physical attributes of the book hence the name of "physical bibliography".

Under the major heading "intellectual bibliography" comes what some writers call
- analytical or critical bibliography
- subject bibliography or reference bibliography.

All these uncover the intellectual content of the book, aiming to help the user acquire depth and knowledge on the subject of his/her interest.

The second major class of bibliography is what Stokes calls "physical bibliography", which encompasses the concepts of descriptive and textual bibliography and as its name suggests, deals purely with physical aspects of the book, in other words its external characteristic as material entities. His classification of bibliographies goes according to the activities the latter are meant to perform and these in Stokes' viewpoint are:
- enumerative bibliography [listing books]
- analytical or critical bibliography [deals with the content of books]
- descriptive bibliography [describes books]
- textual bibliography [deals with literary texts]
- historical bibliography [deals with history of books].

2.2 NATIONAL BIBLIOGRAPHY DEFINITION

Since its appearance the phrase national bibliography has taken different definitions. The first one was that of the British Scholar Frank Campbell in 1896 who wrote [8] "a national system of bibliography to be composed of the listings of the national Libraries which, ideally, would be copyright depositories, supplemented by lists of government publications issued by the government printers. The whole was to be composed of parts issued in convenient form at convenient intervals of time".

Since this definition, there have been many others at different times. They all vary on the following points:

1. An essential aspect of any national bibliography is that it is a bibliographic record of works published within the geopolitical borders of a country. This point can, however, vary in its details.
2. Variation of coverage which is dealt with in different terms in
the definitions, such as the language of the country, the
citizens of the country, the country as a subject, the citizens
of the the country as a subject.
This variation is due to the nature of the publishing movement
within the geopolitical borders of any one country.

3. Differences of terms referring to the range of the national
bibliography. In some the word "country" was used, for instance
The Library of Congress classification for bibliography (class z)
[9], in 1902, the American Library Association (ALA) [10],
Ranganathan [11], Library Encyclopedia [12], in 1967; George
Schneider, 1934 [13], Muliles [14], Mustapha Husam AL-Din [15].
In others the word "nation" is used as in Shores [16], Linder
[17] in 1959, Habib Salama [18], Abdul Sattar AL-Halwaji [19],
and in others "state" as in Anwer Omar [20].

The difference between these words is semantic and not really
political. The word 'country' is more frequent in the above
definitions for its broad reference to the range of coverage. It
is defined by the Oxford Dictionary as follows:

"Country: the territory or land of a nation; usually an
independent state, or region once independent and still distinct
in race, language, institutions, or historical memories, as
England, Scotland and Ireland, in the United Kingdom" [21]
4. Difference in defining the types of information tools and terminology referring to them. Most use the term "publications", others use "books", and still others use "record".

5. The definitions differ in respect of national bibliography content. Some refer to what is published within one country; others refer to what is published by authors belonging to one country even if publication was outside the country, and others take a wider view and say that it includes everything published on the country regardless of the nationality of the author and place of publication.

6. They differ in what they actually list, some containing a wider range of publications than others.

This study will opt for a more simplified version of these definitions: "A bibliography is a list of all records of information used on a periodical basis, within the geo-political borders of a given country in the national language or other language of use by its inhabitants".

2.3 SIGNIFICANCE OF NATIONAL BIBLIOGRAPHY

Given that the national bibliography is the record of the published intellectual activities of the members of one country, it plays a major role in [22]:

28
1. Cultural and intellectual communication on an international level.

2. Meeting the need of libraries world-wide to know and obtain what is published in the Arab world.

3. Facilitating exchange of bibliographic records through an international network. This is important in view of the efforts towards Universal Bibliographic Control in recent decades.

4. Bibliographical control of the published cultural heritage.

5. Informing about, and promoting the intellectual activities of a country for the benefit of researchers and publishers.

6. Helping with selection and supply in different libraries.

7. Helping avoidance of multiple translations of one work and preserving the original.

8. Encouraging the implementation of depository law.

9. Helping the study and measurement of national publishing activity.

Thus the national bibliography provides considerable facilities to all concerned with libraries, documentation, information, and commercial publishing. It is also of significant help in co-ordinating intellectual activities between countries and between historians of thought, science and arts.
2.4 TYPES OF NATIONAL BIBLIOGRAPHY

Two types of national bibliography can be distinguished:

a) Current national bibliography: published on a periodical basis, including new publications.
   - British National Bibliography
   - Bibliographie de la France

b) Retrospective national bibliography: covers intellectual production for a previous period of time which starts in a specific year and ends in another.

2.5 ISLAMIC BIBLIOGRAPHY

Muslims have been considerably interested in bibliography, and have contributed towards its development. (For a history of bibliography in the Islamic world see Geschichte der Arabischen Litteratur by Carl Brockelmann and Geschichte des Arabischen Schrifttums by Fuat Sezgin). This interest is a result of the proliferation of creative literature in the Islamic countries ever since the 18th century. The number of manuscripts of books kept in a single library is put at hundreds. Compiling lists of books of Islamic thought was a profession undertaken by many scholars such as:
1. Ibn AL-NADIM, who wrote AL-FIHRIST in Baghdad. He compiled the work in 377H/987 (AD) in the form of a bibliographical history of literature arranged in ten books [23].

The "Fihrist" is considered the first comprehensive bibliography of Arabic heritage. This is because its reference material [24] is a record of the names of scholars, authors and compilers (mainly as far as Arabic literature and history is concerned) since the Age of Ignorance until the author's death. Besides the Arabic-Islamic culture, he also dealt with the Greek, Hindu and Persian cultures.

The "Fihrist" indeed presents a clear image of its age in respect of the number of the books compiled and progress in the writing profession; the author writes about Qur'anic sciences, grammar, language, poetry, prose, philosophy, medicine and chemistry. Information he gives in addition to the sciences mentioned above, is as follows:

1. Autobiographies which include the full name, the family name, the epithet, the ancestry.

2. The authors' stories, their qualities, those who quoted or listened to them.

3. The classification of books in every art, and all the books translated into Arabic.
The organisation of the "Fihrist" was as follows:

1. The main entry: that was divided into ten articles which were divided according to various arts. The latter were, in their turn, divided into branch subjects.

2. The additional entry: he appended to the "Fihrist" two indexes in Arabic which include the subjects of the articles and the authors mentioned in the book alphabetically.

The style of the book is rather scientific, characterised by conciseness. It is virtually a listing of authors' name and books. However, there is sometimes a description of certain books, their sizes and the page size.

2. Another important book is Kashf Al-Zoonan an Asami Al-Kutub wa'l Funoon by Haji Khalif (1017-1067H, 1609-1657 AD) [25]

This is a general bibliography of all books, with summaries on every book. It includes Arab and Muslim countries from the second century (AH) to the early eleventh century AH (17th C). The books are classified alphabetically according to their titles. Every science is mentioned in its alphabetical order, e.g. the science of Hadith is mentioned and defined under the letter (H).

The book is made up of five chapters and a conclusion. Its reference material is: 1) the books; 2) the authors listed alphabetically with brief note on their lives, countries,
professions and the dates of death; 3) brief notes on the subject of books, their classification, size, when they were written, when commenced and when finished, the reasons behind the writing of the book and the opinions of scholars about them.

3. "Eidhah Almaknooaz fee Al-Thayl Ala Kashf Al-Zunoon", and


Book (4) is a survey of the names of the authors who appeared in "Kashf Al-Zunoon" and its appendix, together with each one's compilations. The first names are classified without taking into consideration the epithets and the family names. Those who bear the same name are classified chronologically according to the death date irrespective of their parents' and grandparents' names. Under every author's name his books are classified alphabetically.

The third book is prepared in the same way as "Kashf Al-Zunoon" with a concise addition of the names of the libraries where the books can be found. It also states whether the book has been printed.

5. There is also "Muftah Al-Saadah" by Tashikubry Zadah (968H, 1561 AD). This book is a valuable bibliographical reference since he collected the names of all the books that are about the various sciences of his age. It is also an encyclopedia of the history of Arabic science and an encyclopedia of books written on the Islamic heritage.
The book is divided into two parts each of which includes seven sections. Each section is divided into several branches, and each branch into sciences, each of which is, in its turn, subdivided into further branches and so on.

6. There is also the book entitled "Al-Thareea'h Ila Tasneef Al-Sheea'h" by Agh Buzruk Al-tehrani. Twenty-one parts of it appeared between 1936 and 1972 in Al-Najaf and Tehran. The author collected all the books written by the Shi'ih scholars throughout history, and classified them according to their titles.

There are no autobiographies in his book although the names of the authors and the dates of their birth and death are mentioned. He only described the books.

7. Ibn Kayr Al-Ashbeeli's work Fehrist Ma Rawahu Ann Shiyukhehi Men Al-Dawaween Al-Musannafah fee Dhroob Al-e'lm wa Anwaa Al-ma'arif. This was compiled in 1310H (1893 AD).

Most of the above mentioned works were not bibliographies based on systematic principles of describing, arranging and analysing publications. They represent limited general bibliographies undertaken by non-professional bibliographers.

All the above 7 works have the old traditional approach, the next has the Modern approach.
8. Jamea Al-Tasaneef Al-Masriyah Al-Hadeethah, is a collection of comparatively Modern Egyptian Compilations from 1301H (1883AD) to 1310H (1892AD) by Abdullah Al-Ansari, ed. 1, Al-amiriyyah printing house, Egypt 1312H. 76p. This is a medium sized book which contains lists of Arabic Egyptian publications and their translations "into Persian and French" and everything printed in Egypt even if it is written by a non-Egyptians.

Every discipline has been alphabetically ordered, and if the author appears in more than one discipline, all places are referred to. If the author reappears in the same discipline he is also referred to.

The information presented in the book consists of: title of the book, name of the author and date of printing. It also gives a brief summary of the book and the author, and sometimes the body sponsoring the printing.

The book is organised according to disciplines which range from Qur'an studies, recitation of the Qur'an, exgesis, study of Allah's oneness, fundamentals, logic, fiqh, Imam Abi Hanifa ..... to history, topography and geography, nature, chemistry, medicine, education, etc.

The compiler has covered all the scientific and political journals in an independent section at the end of the book where it gives the history of the establishment, the manner of publication of the journal, and the founder.
At the beginning of the book there is the title index, an index of disciplines, the number of publications in each discipline "337", the number of translated books "23".


This is a book of 300 pages, 2 pages of amendments, 6 pages of English, 3 pages of explanation of the organisation. It records 4538 publications, 3815 of which are of the various areas of knowledge "according to the table", 133 children's books and 590 school books.

It contains no government publications. The organisation is according to DDC and the list entries are included in subject order. The book contains two indexes, author and title. The information presented on every book includes the name of the author, title of the book, place of publication, name of publisher, date of publication, and other data such as volume, number of volumes and pages.

The following table shows the distribution of books according to discipline:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Discipline</th>
<th>Number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>general knowledge</td>
<td>61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>philosophy</td>
<td>176</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>religion</td>
<td>1353</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

36

It is thorough in its inclusion in the book of titles printed in the East and West. It is a large book of three volumes. The second and third volumes are contained in one book which includes all the books and travel publications published in Arabic or translated into Arabic.

The catalogue is ordered alphabetically by either the pen name, the surname, the father's name or the son's name of the author. Each item lists the title of the book, the name and date of birth, and death, if any, of the author. In some of them there is an introduction to the author and his publications, but there are no abstracts of the books.

The catalogue also contains a general alphabetically ordered index of book titles and beside it the number of the page where the book is mentioned. Another index, which is ordered according to
discipline, contains the major books with their abstracts and marginal notes where they occur.

The catalogue uses some symbols and abbreviations such as a star between the two names of the author, referring to the second name in the sense of "see".

The pages have been given two numbers because they are divided into two columns. There are 17 pages for errata and one page annexed to the book titles, 152 pages for the book index. It is worth mentioning that the first volume is 960 pages and the second is 962-2024 pages long. In addition to books published in Egypt and other Arab Countries, the catalogue includes those published in Iran and India. There is no index to indicate the number of books in each country. The compiler mentions the references and publications which he used in the compilation of his work.


A medium-sized book of two volumes. The first volume has 163 pages and includes 1207 books distributed in 11 sections. It also gives two indexes, author names and book titles. The book card contains the author's name, the book title, number of pages, and date of publication. On some cards the date of publication and page numbers are not mentioned, and some abbreviations are used. Some
publication places are foreign because not all of them were printed in Egypt. Some were printed in Baghdad, Lebanon etc.

The first volume lists the books published from 1926 to 1930 and the second volume lists the publications issued in 1927 (1345-46). The book also contains corrections of mistakes and items not mentioned in the first volume. The second volume contains 163 pages, 11 sections the same as the first volume, and includes 1207 books. It gives an annex for all sections which includes what the supplement has not included. It also has an alphabetically-ordered index of author names and a general index.

The volumes have the same distribution of the 11 sections, which includes translations, books of history, travel, geography, literature, rhetoric, Islam, Christianity, law, medicine, mathematics, agriculture, arts, stories, novels, logic, wisdom and philosophy.

Other works in the Arab world:

1. Kuwait

Some specialised bibliographies have been published by the Library Administration of the Kuwait University [26]. In 1985 [27] the State Central Library of the National Council for Culture, Art and Literature, the Administration of Public Libraries, issued a Kuwait National Bibliography for 1983. The 1984 issue appeared in 1988. The 1983 issue included 382 books and the 1984 included 245 books. The bibliography uses the modified version of DDC. It has adopted the
rules of the ISBD for the descriptions on cards. It also includes indexes of authors, titles and subjects.

2. Syria [28]:
The publication of the Syrian National Bibliography (SNB) started effectively on the opening of al-Assad Library (the National Library of the Arab Syrian State) in 1984. The first issue contained the publications of 1984 and all the publications appearing in the previous two years that the library had collected. The SNB has adopted the ISBD in the bibliographic description of its items and the DDC in their classification. It gives four alphabetically ordered indexes: authors, titles, subjects and printers.

It also published analytical catalogues of Syrian periodicals in two volumes each containing records of all the periodicals, and articles published in the Syrian press, except the political commentaries or news reports. Each description gave a brief explanation of the study or article in question.

3. Lebanon [29]:
A national bibliography published by the National Library al-Nashrah Al-Biblyughrafiyah Al-Lubnaniyah LiL-Intaj Al-Fikri wa Al-Tibai fee Lubnan (Lebanese Bibliographic Production) for the years 1964, 1965, 1971 and 1972. There is no known Current National Bibliography at the present time.
4. Libya [30]:
Al-Bibliyughrafiyah al-Arabiyyah al-Libiyah. The Libyan National Bibliography was first published in 1972. Since 1973 the LNB has been published in one volume per year to cover works issued in the preceding year.

5. Morocco [31]:

6. Algeria [32]:

7. Bahrain [33]:
A current national bibliography for Bahrain has existed since 1975 and is published by the Manama Public Library.

8. Iraq [34]:
Al-Bibliyughrafiyah al-wataniyyah al-Iragiyah. (Iraqi National Bibliography) was published annually from 1971 to 1978, after which it came out on a quarterly basis. The title of the publication has had several changes, in (1971-1976), (1976-1977), (1977-1980) and in 1981.
9. Jordan [35]:

10. Qatar [36]:

2.6 DEPOSITORY LAW

For the National Library to help produce an accurate and comprehensive National Bibliography there must be a depository law. The more effective the depository law of a country, the more accurate is its national bibliography.

King Francois I of France is believed to have been responsible for the world's first depository law (28 December 1537). The legislation included the following:

"Every printer and publisher in France, without exception, was ordered to forward to the learned Abbe Melin de Saint Gelais, who had charge of the Royal Library at Blois, a copy of every newly published book, irrespective of author, subject, cost, size, date, or language, and whether illustrated or not." [37]
2.7 CONCEPT OF DEPOSITORY LAW

"Legal deposit, copyright deposit, the copy tax or the delivery of printed copies, as it is severally termed, is a method whereby one or more privileged libraries in a nation, state, province, union or empire regularly receive free copies of all newly published books from the publishers or printers in that region." [38]

2.8 AIMS OF DEPOSITORY LAW

The depository law is basically devised to control publications and imprints. Another aim is to control printing and publishing through the deposition of copies with the authorised library (e.g. National Library). Thus it protects the copyrights of the author and publisher.

To sum up, the depository law basically aims at:

a) Preserving and collecting the national intellectual output and thus

b) Setting up and publishing a national bibliography.

2.9 DEPOSITORY LAW IN CERTAIN COUNTRIES

2.9.1 The United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland

"The Act of 1911 requires publishers to deposit with the British Museum one of each of their publications and entitles on demand, under certain conditions, Oxford University, Cambridge University, Trinity College Dublin, the National Library of Scotland, and the National Library of Wales to receive one copy of each new publication". [39]
The link between legal deposit and the national bibliography is that in the case of the British Library (the successor to the British Museum mentioned above) for instance, the copies that are received by this library are used as the basis of the British National Bibliography. It could be argued for Britain and indeed for all countries that without effective legal deposit there would be no national bibliography.

2.9.2 France

"... that of November 21, 1960, states that the deposit of a publication in the Bibliotheque Nationale must be, at the latest, 48 hours before it appears for sale. In the case of newspapers and periodicals, however, it is sufficient for them to be deposited immediately before sale. A later decree, that of August 1, 1963, extends the legal deposit to photographic works which must be deposited with the Bibliotheque Nationale". [40]

2.9.3 Italy

The Laws of 1939 and 1945 provide that:

"...printers and publishers are obliged to deposit four copies of all printed matter in the local prefecture of the province and one copy in the office of the Procurators della Repubblica. Of the first four copies, one goes to each of the National libraries at Florence and Rome, one to the capital of the province concerned, and one to the office of Literary, Scientific and Artistic Property." [41]

Returning to the number of copies required to be deposited, the following table [2.1] illustrates the variations: [42]
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Country</th>
<th>Number of copies</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>United States</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Albania</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Argentina</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Australia</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Barbados</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brazil</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bulgaria</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Burma</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Canada</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Costa Rica</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cyprus</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Finland</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guinea</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lebanon</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Libyan Arab Republic</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New Zealand</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Portugal</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rumania</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yugoslavia</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Republic of Vietnam</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

TABLE 2.1: THE NUMBER OF COPIES TO BE DEPOSITED IN DIFFERENT COUNTRIES

2.10 THE DEPOSITORY LAWS IN SOME ARAB COUNTRIES [43]

2.10.1 Lebanon

The Depository Law was passed in 1959. Clause 41 of the legislative decree number 134 of 12/06/1959 stipulates the following:

"Every printing or publishing house in Lebanon should send directly to the National Book House two copies of every one of its publications: books, bulletins, maps, photographs, etc. As for magazines and newspapers, their managing director should send two copies of each to the National Book House."
2.10.2 Jordan

The law of Publications stipulates that two copies of every non-government publication should be deposited with the Centre for Books and Publications. The aim behind this law is to control the publications while still in print. If it is licensed, the publication can be printed; once printed, copies should be deposited.

2.10.3 The Sudan

Khartoum University Library runs the National Library. The third clause of the Law 38 of 1966 obliges every publisher of a book in the Sudan to deposit a copy of it, at his expense, within one month of its publication in a number of establishments which are: The Khartoum University Library, the House of Central Documents which is associated with the Board of Education, and the Central Library of Umm Dorman. Any publisher who does not abide by any clause of the law is to be punished by a fine that does not exceed five pounds, in addition to the value of the book.

After the amendment of the law in 1971, the responsibility for deposition moved from the publisher to the printer. The Sudanese writer who publishes a book or has it published outside the Sudanese Democratic Republic should deposit a copy at his own expense, within one month of its publication, in each of the establishments mentioned above. Each of these establishments should send to the publisher or the author an acknowledgement of receipt. The amendment also included the fine which went up from five to twenty-five pounds in addition to the value of the book.
2.10.4 Iraq

Before the promulgation of the Depository Law in Iraq on 14 March 1970, all the national printing houses used to deposit a copy of every publication in accordance with the law on printing houses. However, when the Depository Law was promulgated, the number of copies that should be deposited was increased to five of each publication whether national, official or semi-official.

The fifth clause decreased the number of copies of certain publications that should be deposited such as:

- Two copies of the compilations that are printed and published outside Iraq by Iraqi writers, translators, editors or publishers.
- One copy of every typed university dissertation or thesis that should be deposited before distribution.

There is a fine for those who break the law. It is no less than 20 dinars and no more than 100. The responsibility for deposition is that of the printer. The law does not refer to the specified period of deposition.

2.10.5 Bahrain

The Depository Law in Bahrain (1975) obliges writers and printers to deposit, at their own expense, five copies of their publications in the Public Library immediately before the distribution of the publications. The law also obliges Bahrain writers overseas to deposit the same number of copies of every publication in the Public Library. There is no national library in Bahrain.
2.10.6 Kuwait [44]
There is no depository law for publications in Kuwait. The matter is being studied. There is however a depository law for government and semi-governmental publications, 5 copies of which should be deposited in the state Central Library. This system was effective from September 1985. This is just a provisional measure pending the foundation of Central National Library, which is being undertaken.

2.10.7 Syria [45]
Article 17 of the decree of the establishment of Al-Assad Library states: "Until special legislation for legal deposition of books and publications is made the printers and publishers must jointly deposit, free of charge, 5 copies of every book, imprint or periodical they produce. The same applies to the author or translator of a book, if publication is made abroad. Any offence will entail a fine of not less than 2000 and not more than 3000 Syrian Liras". This same article applies to any intellectual production such as cinema films, music compositions or artistic works, but deposited copies of these are produced at expense of the Library.

Having considered these laws, it is clear that the number of copies that should be deposited varies significantly from one country to another. There are those which require one copy of each new publication and others which require up to 17 copies. Other countries may require more than the number stated in the law for reasons such as preserving, exchanging or even offering complimentary copies of the publication.
Other variations concern the place of deposition. There are national libraries, national institutions, royal libraries or even university libraries. It varies from one country to another. Furthermore, the names of national libraries are not standard.

The party responsible for deposition also varies from one country to another. Some hold the publisher responsible for deposition, others the printer, the printer and the publishers, the author, the publisher and the printer, or just the publisher and author, etc.

SUMMARY

This chapter has mainly focused on the differences pertaining to bibliography. Definitions of bibliography differ from one scholar to another and from one period to another. The terminology, the time of coverage, the frequency of publication, the channel of information and its terms, vary considerably. Another difference concerns the number of copies of a publication to be deposited, and the institution to be deposited with, which varies (national library, national book house, public library, university library).

There is also a difference in who is responsible for depositing the required copies. Some countries lay this responsibility on the author, others on the publisher or publisher and printer, etc. It is obvious that these differences are due to the different approaches to developing the national bibliography. In this regard Knud Larsen said [46]
"There are two basic essentials for the development of a nation's cultural life - a national library and a national bibliography, which should be closely linked..."
REFERENCES


8. LINDER, op. cit, p.12.


17. LINDER, op.cit, p.18.


23. THE ENCYCLOPAEDIA of Islam, op. cit, p.1197.


26. LETTER to the researcher from the Director of the Library Administration in the University of Kuwait Sent on 26.9.1989.

27. LETTER to the researcher from the Secretary General of the Kuwait National Council for Culture, Art, and Literature sent on 1.11.1989.

28. LETTER to the researcher from the Director General of Al-Assad Library on 7.9.1989.


33. Ibid, p.38.

34. Ibid, pp.158-159.


36. Ibid, p.36.


38. ENCYCLOPAEDIA of Librarianship, op.cit, p.243.


40. Ibid, p.145

41. Ibid, p.147

42. Ibid, pp.140-153

54

44. LETTER from the Secretary General of the Kuwait National Council for Art and Literature, op. cit.

45. LETTER from the Director General of Al-Assad Library, op. cit.

INTRODUCTION

The need for printing and publishing has gone hand in hand with the development in education and cultural awareness. These are the fruits gathered from development plans set by the Saudi government to meet the challenges that lay in the future of the Saudi people. It is indicated in this Chapter that one of the main factors which prompted the advancement of printing and publishing is the Islamic religion, because the Kingdom of Saudi Arabia has always been a protector and advocate of Islam. To fulfill this role in an information-oriented age, it has to acquire and modernise printing and publishing concerns and encourage people to undertake and promote them. In the following sections, the researcher will try to introduce the reader to this development in the KSA.

3.1 PRINTING IN THE OTTOMAN ERA

Historians agree that printing was introduced for the first time in the KSA in 1300H (1883 AD), which was when Hijaz Wilayati Matba'at si [1], a small printing house, was founded by Othman Nuri Bacha, the governor of Hijaz. It had a small machine, intended for official use.
Just two years later, in 1302H (1885 AD), the Turkish government supplied it with a medium size French-made machine. A few years later a lithographic machine was added to it. Then the printing house came to be known as Al-Matba'at Al-Amirriyah and in 1356H (1939 AD) became Matba'at Umm Al-Qura, the government printer. This was in the Saudi ruling era.

The Turkish government was so interested in the printer that it provided the printing house with a single-wheeled printing machine together with a complete set of characters from Vienna.

Matba'at Al-Wilayah was developed and subsequently expanded its production when it was further provided with new characters and when another printing machine was bought from Europe specially for printing certain letters. In the beginning it was particularly interested in books of Al-Shariah studies (Islamic law). Later it started printing some government documents. During the First World War the Turkish government requisitioned Zahlat Al-fatat printing house and transferred it to Makkah to enlarge the state printer [2].

We have thus far only considered the development of public printing houses. As for the private ones in the same period, the first one was founded in Makkah in 1327H (1909 AD) by Sheikh Majid Kurdi. It was known as Matba'at Al-Taraqqy Al-Majidiyyah. It printed materials ranging from books to letters and Islamic Exegesis studies.

During the same year two other printing houses were established: one of them, Matba'at Al-Islah in Jeddah, was founded on the 26th of Rabia
Al-thani 1327H (16 May 1909 AD) and printed the weekly Al-Islah, the Hijaz's newspaper, which was under the management of Raghib Tawakkal. Sheik Mohammad Ali Zinel [3] took over its management.

The second printing house was Matba'at Shams Al-Haqiqah, founded in 1327H (1909 AD) by a business company in order to issue the newspaper Shams Al-Haqiqah in Makkah. Its management was in the hands of Hassan Makkii Affendi, but its operations came to an end by the end of 1327H (1909 AD) when Sheikh Majid Kurdi purchased it [4].

Of the first printing house in Al-Madina Al-Monawarah Dr Mohammad Abdulrahman Al-Shamikh notes, in his paper Dhuhur Al-tiba'ah fi Bilad Alharamayn Al-Sharifayn (Introduction of Printing in the Country of the Two Holy Mosques), that it was founded in 1329H (1911 AD) by Sheikh Kamel Alkhuja, Chairman of the business society in Al-Madina [5].

There was also the Al Hijaz printer, moved by the Turkish authorities from Damascus to Hijaz in order to print the Hijaz newspaper in 1334H (1915 AD). It was started with three issues a week, then five, and then became a daily, but a year after its original appearance it stopped.

In 1346H (1917 AD), there was only a small printer in Madina. It was run manually and was called Matba'at Al-Fyha. It was founded by Ahmad Al-Fid Abade and Abdul Haq Al-Naqshabandi. This printer carried on until 1355H (1936 AD) when it was acquired by the brothers Ali and Othman Hafiz and became the Madina Printing House. It was this house which issued in 1356H (1837 AD) the Madina newspaper [6].
3.2 PRINTING IN THE HASEMITE ERA

After Al-Sharif Al-Husain had been appointed as King of Hijaz, he established in 1337H (1919 AD) a small printer in Makkah to print his official newspaper Al-Qiblah. This printer was made by Tip-Top manufacturers. Abdulwahhab Mad'hhar Al-Ansari from the Wilson Store in Cairo [7] bought it later.

Private printing houses were drastically reduced in number as a result of the policy which Al-Sharif Al-Husain pursued at the time. He was opposed to the dissemination of educational and cultural material. He ordered some houses to close, and others grew weaker. Al-Matba'at Al-Amiriyyah carried out its work with machines which it had used under the Turks. Despite the long service in Hijaz this printer was only supplied with the minimum necessary stationery and, rarely, some characters.

3.3 PRINTING IN THE SAUDI ERA

When King Abdul Aziz assumed power at Makkah in 1344H (1925 AD) he renamed Al-Matba'at Al-Amiriyyah Umm Al-Qura printing house. In this era printing was given due attention by the government. For example, in 1345H (1926 AD), a group of experts were invited to teach Saudi printing staff the principles of printing. In 1347H (1928 AD) the Saudi government brought in a number of engineers, printers and technicians specialised in typesetting machines, and provided them with the equipment necessary for their job. In 1354H (1935 AD), the status of printing was remarkably improved. The old printing machines operated by hand were replaced by mechanical ones.
The government was not only interested in the state-owned printers but also non-governmental printing houses. This concern was shown by the government when they offered a grant to anybody who wished to learn printing at Umm Al-Qura.

The Saudi government regarded printing as a means of spreading the Islamic tenets. For this reason they offered certain concessions to printers. For example, paper used for religious material was exempted from all customs dues. Some printers, such as Al-Salafiyah Printing Press in Makkah and the Arab Printing and Publishing Company were exempted from any tax on equipment, machinery and financial insurance [8].

As a consequence of these developments many printing houses were established successfully throughout the Kingdom. For example, the Arab Printing Press was founded to print Al-Manhal magazine in 1360H (1941 AD). There were also many other small printing houses scattered here and there in Makkah, such as Al-Haram Printing House. The government also helped establish printing, journalism and publications in 1372H (1952 AD) in Jeddah. It published all kinds of commercial and governmental material, as well as radio magazines, the Al-Haj and Al-Manhal magazine and Al-Adhwa newspapers.

According to the statistical survey carried out by the General Directorate of Publications at the Ministry of Information, the number of printing houses throughout the Kingdom was about 475 in 1401h (1981 AD) [9] and 789 in 1409H (1989). The number of non-government printing houses in Riyadh alone reached 217 [10].
In Riyadh, printing was first introduced in 1374H (1954 AD). This happened after the formation of the National Printing and Publishing Company, the best known act of which was the establishment of the Riyadh Printing House which started work in 1374H (1954 AD), followed by many other printers [11]. The number of printers in the Eastern provinces of KSA was put at 41 in 1402H (1982 AD), according to the registers of the General Directorate for Publications. This number included Matabi Al-Mutawi, established in 1388H (1958 AD).

There is also Matba'at Zinkuqra'f, Al-Mantiqah Al-Shargiyah established in 1377H (1957 AD). There are others spread over the eastern part of the Kingdom: Al-Wafa Printing House in Al-dammam founded in 1383H (1964 AD), Al-Dahran Printers and Al'Tali'ah Printers founded in 1392H (1972 AD). Among other places newly founded printers are to be found in Bigaq Al-Jibil, Ra's Tannurah and Siha't.

These printers have fulfilled a leading role in promoting the literary and intellectual works of Saudi writers. They have contributed moreover to the reinforcement of the foundations of printing which have helped qualify many competent Saudi staff and employees. Publications have come within easy reach of the general public.

3.4 PUBLISHING SAUDI BOOKS

The tangible development in writing and publishing is a result of many factors, among which are:
a) Extension of education at all levels ranging from primary to University. This has resulted in the publication of many books of academic and scientific value. Table 3.1 shows the extent of advancement achieved in education (for male and female) in a period of 24 years (i.e. 1384/1385H (1964-1965 AD) to 1408H (1988 AD).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Students In</th>
<th>1384/85</th>
<th>1399/400</th>
<th>1407</th>
<th>1408 [15]</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Kindergarten</td>
<td>1,375</td>
<td>24,448</td>
<td>60,590</td>
<td>60,258</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elementary</td>
<td>224,478</td>
<td>862,260</td>
<td>1,460,283</td>
<td>1,578,287</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intermediate</td>
<td>20,275</td>
<td>245,194</td>
<td>431,802</td>
<td>465,883</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary</td>
<td>4,930</td>
<td>93,584</td>
<td>198,449</td>
<td>217,619</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*Technical</td>
<td>4,016</td>
<td>6,224</td>
<td>13,095</td>
<td>22,751</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*Teacher training</td>
<td>8,597</td>
<td>21,886</td>
<td>22,353</td>
<td>23,113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*Special education</td>
<td>652</td>
<td>1,920</td>
<td>3,208</td>
<td>3,526</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Higher</td>
<td>3,083</td>
<td>47,733</td>
<td>105,896</td>
<td>112,158</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adult</td>
<td>32,739</td>
<td>142,370</td>
<td>150,729</td>
<td>156,996</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

TOTAL: 300,145 1,445,619 2,446,405 2,640,591

* Technical:

1. Industrial education
2. Junior College of Technology
3. Commercial education
4. Higher institutes for financial and commercial sciences
5. Model Agricultural Institute
6. Vocational and pre-vocational training
7. Technical assistants institutes.
* Teacher Training:
  1. Secondary teacher training
  2. Upgrading centres
  3. Art education
  4. Physical education
  5. Qur'anic
  6. Science and mathematics centres
  7. Junior colleges

* Special education for the handicapped:
  1. Kindergarten
  2. Elementary (general)
  3. Intermediate (general)
  4. Secondary (general)
  e) Vocational rehabilitation and training.

Table 3.2 shows the distribution of students in the Universities of the KSA and compares the numbers of the intake of students up to the end of the academic year 1405/06H (1985/86 AD).
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>University or College</th>
<th>Locality</th>
<th>Founded in</th>
<th>Intake</th>
<th>1390/91</th>
<th>1400/01</th>
<th>1405/06</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>KSU Riyadh</td>
<td></td>
<td>1377H (1957 AD)</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>2,899</td>
<td>14,042</td>
<td>26,873</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IU Al-Madina</td>
<td></td>
<td>1381H (1961 AD)</td>
<td>85</td>
<td>591</td>
<td>2,739</td>
<td>2,275</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KAU Jeddah</td>
<td></td>
<td>1387H (1967 AD)</td>
<td>68</td>
<td>993</td>
<td>22,053</td>
<td>21,886</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IMISIU Riyadh</td>
<td></td>
<td>1394H (1974 AD)</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>2,009</td>
<td>5,870</td>
<td>12,395</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KFUPM Dahran</td>
<td></td>
<td>1384H (1964 AD)</td>
<td>63</td>
<td>450</td>
<td>3,054</td>
<td>3,953</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KFU Al-Dammam</td>
<td></td>
<td>1395H (1975 AD)</td>
<td>170</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>1,430</td>
<td>3,660</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UAQU Makkah University</td>
<td>1385H (1965 AD)</td>
<td>College</td>
<td>96</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>15,056</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Girls Colleges Riyadh</td>
<td></td>
<td>1390H (1970 AD)</td>
<td>577</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>5,321</td>
<td>17,600</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Girls Colleges Jeddah</td>
<td></td>
<td>1394H (1974 AD)</td>
<td>298</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**TABLE 3.2: THE DISTRIBUTION OF STUDENTS IN THE UNIVERSITIES AND COLLEGES OF THE KSA**

64
Table 3.3 shows the distribution of students in Universities of the KSA for the academic year 1408H (1988 AD) [20].

b) Adherence to the religious heritage and the presence of the two Holy Mosques influenced the promotion of Islamic knowledge and Islamic publications.

In his book Bawakeer Al-Tiba'ah wa Al-Matbuat fi bilad Al-Haramayn Al-Sharifayn, Dr Ahmad Al-dubib includes 211 books under the subtitle "Early printing and publications in the land of the two Holy Mosques 1300/1343H" (1822/1924 AD). His comment on this was:

"1. Books by scholars of the two Holy Mosques were the most important material which made the wheel printers start operating.

2. Books of Fiqh, including those dealing with the pre-requisites of Islamic observance, supplications and legal jurisprudent opinion (Fatwa), were the best-sellers. Second to these were grammar books and books of the rules of reciting the Quran and of Sufism. Then there were books on history, the Hadith, rhetoric and literature. This is in accordance with the observations made by the Dutch orientalist Hierkornie that fiqh lessons in Al-Haram Mosque are the most significant ones, then in the second place are other lessons on various sciences" [21].

Table 3.4 shows the importance of religious literature in the years mentioned:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>University or College</th>
<th>Sex</th>
<th>Number of Colleges</th>
<th>First Term</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th>First Term</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th>Second Term</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th>Second Term</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Undergraduates</td>
<td>Graduates Enrolment</td>
<td>Undergraduates</td>
<td>Graduates Enrolment</td>
<td>Undergraduates</td>
<td>Graduates Enrolment</td>
<td>Undergraduates</td>
<td>Graduates Enrolment</td>
<td>Undergraduates</td>
<td>Graduates Enrolment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Total Students</td>
<td>Saudi Students</td>
<td>Total Students</td>
<td>Saudi Students</td>
<td>Total Students</td>
<td>Saudi Students</td>
<td>Total Students</td>
<td>Saudi Students</td>
<td>Total Students</td>
<td>Saudi Students</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KSU</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>23122</td>
<td>19211</td>
<td>3955</td>
<td>541</td>
<td>427</td>
<td>22746</td>
<td>18949</td>
<td>1532</td>
<td>578</td>
<td>440</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>F</td>
<td></td>
<td>9814</td>
<td>7524</td>
<td>2067</td>
<td>256</td>
<td>206</td>
<td>9960</td>
<td>7805</td>
<td>1032</td>
<td>275</td>
<td>216</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IU</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>2003</td>
<td>432</td>
<td>487</td>
<td>242</td>
<td>185</td>
<td>2091</td>
<td>426</td>
<td>591</td>
<td>256</td>
<td>196</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>F</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KFPU</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>4382</td>
<td>3971</td>
<td>1142</td>
<td>269</td>
<td>238</td>
<td>4382</td>
<td>3971</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>269</td>
<td>238</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>F</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KAU</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>14047</td>
<td>12567</td>
<td>2280</td>
<td>453</td>
<td>440</td>
<td>15236</td>
<td>13722</td>
<td>846</td>
<td>501</td>
<td>480</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>F</td>
<td></td>
<td>8061</td>
<td>6514</td>
<td>1451</td>
<td>169</td>
<td>165</td>
<td>7728</td>
<td>6256</td>
<td>715</td>
<td>204</td>
<td>201</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IMISIU</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>10151</td>
<td>9201</td>
<td>2306</td>
<td>615</td>
<td>528</td>
<td>9622</td>
<td>8628</td>
<td>544</td>
<td>701</td>
<td>585</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>F</td>
<td></td>
<td>1375</td>
<td>1315</td>
<td>221</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>1208</td>
<td>1162</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KFUPM</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>2161</td>
<td>1948</td>
<td>509</td>
<td>142</td>
<td>142</td>
<td>2146</td>
<td>1935</td>
<td>121</td>
<td>107</td>
<td>107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>F</td>
<td></td>
<td>1772</td>
<td>1716</td>
<td>394</td>
<td>42</td>
<td>42</td>
<td>1880</td>
<td>1770</td>
<td>168</td>
<td>42</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UQU</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>7783</td>
<td>6678</td>
<td>1115</td>
<td>789</td>
<td>536</td>
<td>6007</td>
<td>5203</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>720</td>
<td>467</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>F</td>
<td></td>
<td>5751</td>
<td>5102</td>
<td>474</td>
<td>405</td>
<td>349</td>
<td>4927</td>
<td>4430</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>398</td>
<td>344</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Girls Colleges</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>19535</td>
<td>18443</td>
<td>4568</td>
<td>618</td>
<td>612</td>
<td>19535</td>
<td>18445</td>
<td>4568</td>
<td>618</td>
<td>612</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>F</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TOTAL</td>
<td>M</td>
<td></td>
<td>63649</td>
<td>54008</td>
<td>11794</td>
<td>3051</td>
<td>2496</td>
<td>62230</td>
<td>52834</td>
<td>3653</td>
<td>3132</td>
<td>2513</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>F</td>
<td></td>
<td>46308</td>
<td>40614</td>
<td>9175</td>
<td>1508</td>
<td>1388</td>
<td>45238</td>
<td>39866</td>
<td>6521</td>
<td>1558</td>
<td>1434</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TOTAL</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>109557</td>
<td>94622</td>
<td>20969</td>
<td>4559</td>
<td>3884</td>
<td>107468</td>
<td>92700</td>
<td>10174</td>
<td>4690</td>
<td>3947</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

TABLE 3.3: DISTRIBUTION OF STUDENTS IN UNIVERSITIES OF THE KSA, 1408H (1988 AD)
Table 3.4: The Religious Literature

Dr Yayha Sa'ati stresses in his book Al-Nashr fi Al-Mamlakah Al-Arabiah Al-Saudiah (publishing in the KSA) that the figures do not represent the complete picture. He says on page 34:

"We must stress here the truth already mentioned, that is that these statistics are based on personal efforts and therefore cannot be complete". [26]

He says elsewhere in the book:

"These figures, by no means, reflect reality. This is a sample of inaccurate information about publishing and writers in the Kingdom due to the lack of bibliographical information for want of a National Library. The only advantage in considering these figures would be that they give some information about the trends of publishing and writers in the Kingdom. It becomes clear to us that the publications often deal with subjects of religion, arts, history, geography, bibliographies and social sciences. On the other hand, there is a shortage of publications in philosophy, psychology, fine arts, exact and applied science. It is also worth mentioning that these figures do not include either official publications or children's books". [27]
c) The promotion of publications and encouragement of writers by the government.

1. For example, the Saudi Arabian Society for Culture and Arts (SASCA) was created in 1393H (1973 AD). Among its purposes are:
   - to raise the quality of culture and the arts in the KSA;
   - to encourage Saudi writers and artists and improve their cultural, artistic and social standards;
   - to represent the KSA in any event which may promote culture and the arts on both the Arab and world scenes;
   - to motivate young talent.

The SASCA issued 89 publications [28] up to Ramadan 1409H (May 1989 AD). It has ten branches in cities other than Riyadh. "The Society has made publishing and disseminating books one of its goals. The Society endeavours to sow the seeds of culture and arts within and outside the Kingdom. It has accorded a special importance to books in terms of writing, editing, publishing and distributing them since it issued its publications in 1398H (1978 AD). The subject range includes religious talks, personal views, studies, travels, Islamic Law, poetry, short stories, editing of scripts, dictionaries, plays, bibliographical guides, music etc. The Society gives an award for the author of the best Saudi book of the year. It has also established a club for the Saudi short story and theatre at Riyadh [29].

68
2. There is also a government appreciation award for literature established in 1400H (1980 AD) and offered every year to the three best Saudi writers. These candidates must have taken part in the promotion of the Islamic, intellectual and literary movements in the KSA and must be no less than fifty years of age. Among the aims of this award are:

- to honour leading figures in the intellectual, cultural and literary domains;
- to preserve and develop the literary and linguistic heritage;
- to encourage writers towards perseverance and high quality work;
- to motivate every new generation of writers to follow in the path of the previous one.

The amount of the prize is 100,000 SR per annum awarded for life with a gold medal and a certificate of arts.

3. Another example of sponsoring societies is the King Faisal Charity Foundation set up in 1396H (1976 AD), which awards the King Faisal International Prize. Amongst its aims are:

- to benefit Islam and Moslems on the intellectual, scientific and professional levels, and to improve their condition, present and future, and also to help them take part in the development of this civilisation.
- to take part in the progress of humanity and to enrich human intellectual life.
- to strengthen Islamic principles and values at the social level and promote them worldwide.
The award is a Gold Medal and 350,000 SR. Promotion of the arts and culture by individuals takes the shape of private financing of publishing.

There are awards the Saudi Government gives from time to time, for example:
- Award for the Best Islamic Architecture Design
- Award of the International Committee for the Preservation of the Islamic Cultural Heritage
- Award of Prince Faisal Ibn Fahd for Children's Culture. It is granted yearly for the best children's book and the best piece of writing by a child.

There are also 53 magazines, and thirteen newspapers published in the KSA; they deal with cultural and intellectual issues and have a wide contribution in the enrichment of the cultural movement. There are also 116 publishing houses throughout the KSA (see Table 3.8).

3.5 PUBLISHING MOVEMENT

The KSA has, in the last few years, witnessed an increasing development of literary publications. A particular illustration of this movement are the widespread literary clubs in the country. They publish various books, both of prose and poetry. Table 3.5 details the output of each club up to 1409H (May 1989 AD).
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Club</th>
<th>Titles Published up to 9-1409H (May 1989 AD)</th>
<th>Year of Creation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TAIF Literary Club</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>1395H (1975 AD)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Riyadh Literary Club</td>
<td>62</td>
<td>1398H (1978 AD)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jeddah Literary and Cultural Club</td>
<td>64</td>
<td>1395H (1975 AD)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Al-Madina Literary Club</td>
<td>58</td>
<td>1395H (1975 AD)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abha Literary Club</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>1398H (1978 AD)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Makkah Literary and Cultural Club</td>
<td>62</td>
<td>1395H (1975 AD)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Al-Qassim Literary Club</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>1400H (1980 AD)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jizzan Literary Club</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>1395H (1975 AD)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

TOTAL: 463

TABLE 3.5: OUTPUT OF EACH CLUB

Universities also print Scientific and Educational Curricula besides indexes, catalogues and reference books. Table 3.6 shows the publications of the Universities.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name of University</th>
<th>Books Arabic</th>
<th>Books English</th>
<th>Periodicals Arabic</th>
<th>Periodicals English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IU</td>
<td>65</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UAQU</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IMISIU</td>
<td>146</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KSU</td>
<td>252</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KAU</td>
<td>134</td>
<td>73</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KFUPM</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KFU</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**TOTAL:** 713 144 84 29

* Publication of periodicals including yearly, semestral, quarterly, irregular monthly, or bimonthly

**TABLE 3.6: PUBLICATIONS OF THE UNIVERSITIES**

Table 3.7 shows certain commercial publishing houses [30].

Publishing houses throughout the KSA are according to the statistics of the Ministry of Information of 1409H (1987 AD) [31]. Table 3.8 shows publishing houses throughout the KSA.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Publishing House</th>
<th>Main Centre</th>
<th>Date of Establishment</th>
<th>Number of Books up to 1988-1409</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dar Al-Shorouq Pub./Dist. Printing</td>
<td>Jeddah</td>
<td>1393H (1973)</td>
<td>192</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dar Al-Marikh Pub. House</td>
<td>Riyadh</td>
<td>1397H (1977)</td>
<td>400</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dar Makkeh Pub./Dist. House</td>
<td>Makkah</td>
<td>1399H (1979)</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dar Al-Bukhari for Pub./Dist.</td>
<td>Buraydah</td>
<td>1403H (1983)</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**TABLE 3.7: COMMERCIAL PUBLISHING HOUSES**
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>City</th>
<th>Total</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Riyadh</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jeddah</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Al-Khobar</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Madina</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Makkah</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dammam</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Buraydah</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Taif</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tabook</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Säkaka</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sayhat</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>TOTAL:</strong></td>
<td><strong>116</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**TABLE 3.8: PUBLISHING HOUSES**

Tables 3.1, 3.2 and 3.3 show that there is a considerable increase in the pupil and student numbers at primary and university levels respectively. Although the number of students has increased, recorded Saudi intellectual writing has not increased accordingly as is clear in Table 3.4. Table 3.5 shows how the number of Arts Clubs, thanks to the government's encouragement, has increased; and so has the number of university graduates Table 3.6, and, the output of commercial publishing houses, Table 3.7. Table 3.8 displays the number of publishing houses distributed over the kingdom.

In 1987 the population reached 14,800,000. The percentage increase in students is even greater than that of the population as a whole. We conclude therefore that:

- the known output of publications does not reflect the true intellectual work produced by Saudis. This is due to the lack of a National Bibliography and a stringent depository law.

74
there is lack of cooperation, to ensure a high quality production compatible with the increase of population and educated people, between the parties concerned.

- the increase in the religious works is on the same level as other subjects; but it is not adequate to the growth of students and population.

3.6 LAWS PERTAINING TO PRINTING HOUSES AND PUBLICATIONS IN THE KINGDOM OF SAUDI ARABIA

Up to the end of 1402H (1982 AD) there were five Laws pertaining to printing houses and publications in Saudi Arabia. The first Law dates back to the Ottoman era during the year 1327H (3 July 1909). This Law was not restricted to Hijaz, but covered the Ottoman Empire as a whole. (Al-Hijaz, as it is known, was a Wilayah under the Ottoman Empire). As for the remaining four Laws, they appeared in the Saudi era in 1347H (1928 AD), 1358H (1939 AD), 1378H (1958 AD) and 1402H (1982 AD) respectively. A short review of these Laws is given below.

3.6.1 The Law of 1327H (1909 AD) [32]

Of the thirty-seven articles of this Law, thirteen related to printing. The most important articles in this Law were the fourth and the eleventh. Article four provided that:

"Printers of scientific, literary, artistic and industrial magazines and books are not required to have a licence, but they should send two copies after printing to the Supervisor in the Ministry of Education and the Ministry of the Interior in Istanbul. Two copies should also be sent to the Ministry of Education and the local government of the Wilayats. If the publications are about religious topics two copies must also be sent to the House of Fatwa."
Any violation of this rule led to a fine of two to five gold Liras. The eleventh article states that the name of the printing houses should be put on every book. Private papers and government office documents were excluded from this rule. Anyone breaching this rule was to be fined from two to fifteen gold Liras.

3.6.2 The 1347H (1928 AD) Law [33]

In the third and fourth articles of the second chapter, the requirements to be fulfilled by a prospective printer on application for a licence are laid down. The sixth article of the same chapter permits the government to close any printing house which starts its work without a formal licence.

The eighth article puts the responsibility for distributing and issuing of publications in breach of the law on the directors and staff of the printing house and requires them to submit two copies of the following:

   i) All books, including pamphlets
   ii) Newspapers and publications of all kinds
   iii) Periodical magazines and publications of all kinds.

Two copies should be sent to the prosecution department and the administration of both the publishing and education departments.

The tenth article stipulates that the name of the printing house should be put on every book or magazine, except government papers.
3.6.3 The 1358H (1939 AD) Law [34]

This Law includes seven chapters. The first one deals with precise definitions of terms. The second chapter consists of general provisions. In the ninth clause there is reference to the responsibility for censorship as follows:

"before the book is available for use, the printer shall present five copies to the printing section at the Ministry of Foreign Affairs".

The remaining chapters of the 1358H (1939 AD) Law are related to the press and its distribution, dues, penalties etc.

3.6.4 The Law of 1378H (1958 AD) [35]

This Law consists of five parts comprising 57 articles in total. The significant part here, the second part, concerns general rules of conduct and rules of licensing, as article eight reveals that there were printers and libraries operating without a licence. These were required to apply for permits within two months of the publication of this Law. Article nine provided that published material should be presented before publication in five copies to the General Administration of Publications or to the Chairman of the Publication Office in the city where the printing took place. Government publications, personal or commercial papers were exempt.

The Administration of Publications had to acknowledge receipt of the materials presented to it within a period of less than one month. In accordance with article nine of this Law, the General Directorate for Radio, Press and Publishing became responsible for preventing any
offences against the reserved copyrights of authors, translators and publishers.

Parts three, four and five concerned the rules for newspapers, critical writings, and reasons for penalties respectively.

3.6.5 The 1402H (1982 AD) Law [36]

The new Royal Law on Publications and Publishing was promulgated in 18 Rabi Al-Thani 1402H (12 February 1982). The Law includes 45 articles, some of which we will deal with here.

Article 1:

Article 1 concerns: definitions of terms within the printing and publishing industry such as:

**Printer:** The manager of the printing house, either the owner or his employee.

**Imprint document:** symbolic explicit word for what is printed with a mechanical or chemical process be it a book, drawing, photograph, or in an aural medium with the intent to circulate it.

**Journalist:** A person taking journalism as a profession or as a freelance job. A journalist can be the writer, editor, news reporter, commentator, analyser, photographer etc.
Article 7:
This forbids the printing or circulation of certain publications for legal, moral, religious and security reasons, or because they might involve harm to foreign relations, libel, incitement to crime etc.

Article 8:
This article defines the role of the printing house concerning the books it prints. It must prepare special registers with numbered pages and the stamp of the Ministry. They must contain information such as the titles of publications in print, name of author and publisher and their addresses and the number of copies to be printed with the name of the printing house's owner. A document containing all this information must be produced on request.

Article 9:
This article requires the printing on the first page of the book of the subject, the author's name and the publisher's when possible, date of publication, the edition number and the name of the publication and the printing house.

Article 11:
This article states that any author wanting his book to published must deposit two copies at the Ministry for approval before printing and circulation.

Article 12:
This states that five copies of a book to be published must be deposited at the National Library (NL) in Riyadh.
The same law applies to Saudi authors who publish their books abroad, as stated in Article 17.

A careful reading of the legal systems reveals that:

1. There is a system of printing and publishing in the KSA but there is no depository law, as such. The General Directorate of Publications in the Information Ministry is in charge of deposition. It has offices all over the Kingdom.

2. Five systems have been adopted by the KSA since 1327H (1909 AD) up to 1402H (1982 AD), all of which include within one of their articles the obligation of deposition but each mentions a different depository party:

   a) The first system stipulates in Article four that two copies should be sent to the Deputy of the Ministry of Education and the Deputy of the Ministry of the Interior in Istanbul, and two copies of religious publications to the House of Alfatwa.

   b) The second system states in Article eight that two copies should be deposited with the General Prosecution and the Administration of Publications and Education.

   c) The third system indicates in Article nine that five copies should be deposited with the Department of Publications in the Foreign Ministry.
d) The fourth system states that the five copies mentioned in the previous system (third system) should be deposited with the General Administration or with the Heads of the Publication Offices in the city.

e) The fifth system states in Article twelve that five copies should be deposited with the National Book House in Riyadh.

3. Apart from the first system which warns that failure of deposition is punishable, there is no mention of penalties.

4. The first, the second and the fifth systems have stated that the title of the printer and the publication should be mentioned in every publication, with the fifth adding that the author, title, publisher and the date of the publication should also be included.

5. Apart from the first system, all the others have made a licence for printers compulsory before commencing operation.

6. Deposition is made explicitly compulsory for the printer in the first, the second, the third and the fourth systems, whereas the fifth system states in Article twelve that it is the author, the publisher or the distributor who should make deposition.

7. Although Article twelve in the last system provides that five copies should be deposited with the NL in Riyadh, this has not yet been complied with [37].
8. There is lack of an explicit statement of penalties in the event of breaching the articles of the systems although the Director of Publications said that there are penalties which vary according to the degree of irregularity.

9. Responsibility for deposition is lost among the author, the publisher and the distributor due to ambiguity in the law. It should be stated explicitly so that the people mentioned cannot have any pretext to avoid it.

10. Time during which deposition should be made is not stated in clear terms, although Article twelve contains the expression "before putting it on sale". Six copies are always presented to the Administration of Publications, in order to obtain a licence for sale of the publication.

11. The Administration of Publications in the Ministry of Information is concerned only with the control of publications. As far as a real NL is concerned, there is still much work to be done. The provisions for one in the article of the system might help in establishing it in future.

12. The seventeenth article from the fifth system: "Every Saudi printing his book abroad must deposit five copies of books and three copies of publications of a different nature free of charge upon printing" has not yet been complied with.
SUMMARY

The development of printing and publishing can be divided into two periods. The first one was before the Saudi era, extending for 40 years, during which publishing and printing knew very little progress. That was due to the Hashemites taking over from the Ottomans, the shortage of resources and the low living standards of the country. The main income depended on the number of pilgrims to Makkah and trade on the western coast.

The second stage, i.e. the Saudi Era, has been marked by security and peace since King Abdulaziz's accession to the throne. The KSA has witnessed great prosperity and development. The economy has grown steadily and with it education. This has given rise to an upsurge in writing and publishing. Printing and publishing houses have opened throughout the KSA.
REFERENCES


3. ABU ABDUL MAQSUD. Tarikh Al-Tiba'ah wa Al-Sahafa fi Al-Hijaz. (History of Printing and Journalism in Hijaz), Umm Al-Qura issue (14.12.1928), issue 211 (11.1.1929).

4. ABUD ABDUL MAQSUD, op. cit.


6. AL-SHAMIKH, Mohammad Abdulrahman. Introduction of printing in the country of the two Holy Mosques. op. cit, p.51-55.

7. SA'BAT, K. op. cit., p.331.


10. INTERVIEW with the Director of Administration of Publishing in the Administration of Publications in the Ministry of Information on 15/5/1989, 10/10/1409H.


26. Ibid. p.34.

27. Ibid. p.41.

28. INTERVIEW with the Chief Librarian of the Library of the Cultural Centre affiliated to the Society of Culture and Arts at Riyadh on 11/10/1409H (12 May 1989 AD).


33. Ibid. p.437-443.

34. Ibid. p.455

35. Ibid. p.455-467.


37. INTERVIEW with the Director of Administration of the Ministry of Information on 12/8/1409H (19/3/1989 AD).
CHAPTER 4
ARAB BULLETIN OF PUBLICATIONS

INTRODUCTION

After the publication of Jame'a Al-tasaneef al-hadeathah in 1927 Arab Bibliography was absent until 1970. Then the Arab Bulletin of Publications (ABP) came into existence as part of the Arab Educational, Cultural Scientific Organisation (ALECSO) in 1970. This project was one of the aims of the organisation set up to improve the culture level of the Arab world in order to fulfil its duty to keep pace with world advancement and contribute to it. To do this it made information on printed and published matter accessible to everybody at the end of 1972 when the first issue of the ABP was published.

4.1 OBJECTIVES

The objectives of the bulletin are:

1. Consolidating intellectual and cultural cooperation between the Arab countries.
2. Exchange of publications.
3. Unification of the cataloguing, classification and bibliographic description systems.
4. Avoiding more than one translation of the same work.
5. Encouraging the application of depository laws.
6. Publication of a National Bulletin in each country.
4.2 CONTENT AND ORGANISATION OF THE BULLETIN

The bulletin includes publications from all the Arab world in two volumes. The first volume includes lists from different Arab countries and the second pertains to the Bulletin of Egyptian Publications. This stopped when the League of Arab States moved to Tunis in 1977.

The language of the publications included is predominantly Arabic. Other languages are also used, such as Kurdish and English. General subjects are included. Unfortunately it does not rely on a unified bibliographical system. It is neither complete nor accurate. The indexes which relate to the name of the author, title, print, place and name of publisher, year, number of pages and the way the publication is organised are based on two systems. The first is used in the issues of 1970 and 1971 which are organised geographically. That is to say, the publications which are related to the Arab country, such as Jordan, Tunisia, Saudi Arabia, Syria, Morocco, are arranged alphabetically under the name of every country as follows:

a) Arabic publications in one part
b) Non-Arabic publications in the other part.

In the later issues, the previous system was changed according to the following criteria:

1. The language (a) Arabic, (b) non-Arabic.
2. The type of printed book (a) the main section, (b) government printed matter, (c) textbooks, and (d) books for children and young people.

3. The subject classified in accordance with the Dewey Decimal Classification System arranged alphabetically. There is an author index, a geographical index and a title index, but no subject index.

4.3 METHOD OF PUBLICATION

The bulletin appeared in eight regular issues in Cairo in cooperation with the National Book House in Egypt from 1970 to 1977. After the Organisation moved from Egypt issues were published in cooperation with the Tunisian Book House from 1978 until 1986. The shortcoming of the publication is that each issue appears once a year and most often covers material two years old.

4.4 SURVEY

The researcher has studied two issues of the bulletin:

1. Issue of 1979 published in 1981[1]; and

4.4.1 The Objectives of this Study

To discover:

1. the extent of cooperation between the Arab countries with regard to this regional bulletin which concerns the Arab world as a whole;
2. the quantity of Arabic publications of each country;
3. trend of production of Arabic publications in general; and
4. to make some observations.

4.4.2 Bulletins of 1979 and 1984

The 1979 bulletin is divided into two parts: the first part includes Arabic publications and comprises the main section, the government section, the school section and children's books. The second part includes foreign publications and comprises the main section, the government section and the children's section. This bulletin was compiled according to the ISBD and the subjects were classified according to the DDC. The bulletin includes the following indexes:

1. Author index
2. Titles index
3. Index of DDC numbers
4. Geographical index, showing the production of each country.

The indexes are alphabetically ordered, and after the introduction there is a list of the Arab countries' abbreviations.

In the 1984 issue, the first section of the publication contains Arabic publications while the second one is devoted to foreign publications and each section is subdivided into three chapters. The first of these is the main chapter, followed by the chapter of the government publications, then the chapter of children's books. This publication was prepared in accordance with ISBD rules in the Arabic edition. The classification of the subjects was made according to the
Dewey Decimal Classification System in its translated edition. There are three indexes:

1. Authors
2. Title
3. Subject.

There is one page which lists the abbreviations of the names of the Arabic country written in the front of every book in order to specify the origin of the book.

The section on foreign publications contains no explanatory notes except for an index for the titles and another for the authors. On many occasions, cross references are used.

From the tables of the two bulletins, we make the following observations:

1. The total in the Arabic main section of the bulletin in 1979 was 2355, the government publications section 352, school books 238, children's books 231.

   In the 1984 bulletin the total in the Arabic section is 1720 and not 1718, since the book following number 310 was given the number 312, not 311, and the same happened to the book following number 177; it was given the number 179, not 178.

2. The total in the foreign main section in the bulletin of 1979 is 344, government publications 140, and school books 27, and in the 1984 bulletin the total is 427 in the main section, and in government publications 84.
3. The Arab countries most cooperative and with the highest output of books in the first bulletin were Iraq, Syria, Kuwait and Saudi Arabia. Likewise in the second bulletin there are Iraq, Jordan, Tunisia and Saudi Arabia. Yemen, Bahrain, Sudan, UAE, Algeria and Oman have the lowest output in the 1979 issue and in the 1984 issue Kuwait, UAE and Libya.

4. Books in the area of literature are the most frequent in both bulletins, followed by those on social science and religion, while fine arts, languages, pure science, general knowledge and philosophy are the least numerous.

5. The bibliographic information is incomplete.

6. The introduction in the 1979 issue does not explain the rules of cataloguing and bibliographic description.

7. There is a difference in respect of the sections. We find an independent section for children's books in the bulletin of 1979 but not one in that of 1984.

8. Because the bulletin is delayed for two years and covers the publications of every year, then it is a retrospective bibliography and not a tool of choice and supply.

9. It is believed that the apparent low production of some Arab countries is the result of:
   - sending an inadequate list
   - a lack of national bibliography
- some countries being unconcerned about sending in the lists of their production. For instance it is unlikely that the production of Libya in 1984 was just two books. There are no figures for the rest of the Arab countries such as the Sudan, Bahrain, Oman, North Yemen and South Yemen in the 1984 bulletin.

10. Although the bulletin is meant to cover solely 1984 and is published in 1986, it contains 8 books without publication dates, 26 books printed in 1983, one book printed in 1981 and another in 1982.

11. The 1979 bulletin which appeared in 1981 included books of the following years:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Year</th>
<th>No of Books</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1971</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1973</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1974</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1975</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1976</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1977</td>
<td>77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1978</td>
<td>941</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No date</td>
<td>165</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

It is also included books which do not bear the publisher's name, the date or the place of publication.

12. It is not reasonable that the UAE's publications were no more than 12 books in 1979 and 17 books in 1984.

There is a study produced by Yahya Sa'ati [3] entitled The ABP of 1981 and Intellectual Publications Output of the KSA. This reports that in the 1981 issue, the ABP included a number of works pertaining to the KSA. These were listed under the abbreviation KSA.

To investigate the comprehensiveness of coverage and information in the Bulletin, Yahya Sa'ati studied the period covered and produced a list of works published within and outside the Kingdom during 1401H (1981 AD).

The Bulletin included 208 titles among which there were 9 government publications and 35 children's books. The Bulletin fell short of covering all the works published within and outside the Kingdom. Although it is difficult to give a definite number of the works published in 1981 in the absence of a national bibliography, Sa'ati compiled a list of 304 titles which were not included in the Bulletin. His number is double the overall number of works included in the Bulletin.

In addition to this there are other shortcomings such as:
- Number of works produced by Saudi authors or published in the Kingdom in comparison with other countries.
- Number of works by Arab authors.
- Mistakes in the author names.
- Mistakes in the publication data.
- Mistakes in the publication information or lack of it.
- Mistakes in entries.
- Mistakes in classification.

SUMMARY

In spite of the importance and necessity of the bulletin in the Arab world, we notice that there is a lack of cooperation and interest on the part of some Arab countries. Thus the bulletin cannot succeed in achieving its objectives.
REFERENCES


   423 + 101p.

3. SA'ATI, Yahya. Al-nashrah Al-Arabiyyah Lilmattbu'at 1981 wa Al-
   entaj Al-fikri Lilmamlakah Al-Arabiyyah Al-Saudiyyah. (The Arabic
   Output of the KSA).
   Hawliyat Al-Maktaba't wa Al-Na'aluma't (Library and Information
   Periodical: a yearly magazine issued by the Library and
   Information Department), Vol. 1. - Riyadh: Muhammed Ibn Saud
   University, Faculty of Social Sciences, 1405-1406. - p.53-106.
TABLES
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>General Publications</th>
<th>Government Publications</th>
<th>School Books</th>
<th>Children's Books</th>
<th>Total</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>KW</td>
<td>265</td>
<td>72</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IR</td>
<td>1074</td>
<td>390</td>
<td>184</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SA</td>
<td>134</td>
<td>291</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SE</td>
<td>297</td>
<td>51</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAR</td>
<td>98</td>
<td>152</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LE</td>
<td>47</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JO</td>
<td>150</td>
<td>331</td>
<td>41</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UAE</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TN</td>
<td>150</td>
<td>298</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>52</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AL</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>119</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OM</td>
<td>20</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>QT</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>55</td>
<td>88</td>
<td>155</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PA</td>
<td>27</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SO</td>
<td>10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BA</td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>YA</td>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2355</td>
<td>1720</td>
<td>352</td>
<td>173</td>
<td>239</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**TABLE 4.1**

First Part (Arabic) (1979-1984)

* KW = Kuwait; IR = Iraq; SA = Saudi Arabia; SE = Syria; MAR = Morocco; LE = Libya; JO = Jordan; UAE = United Arab Emirates; TN = Tunisia; AL = Algeria; OM = Oman; QT = Qatar; PA = Palestine; SO = Sudan; BA = Bahrain; YA = Yemen.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TN</td>
<td>76 325</td>
<td>58 55</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>154 380</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IR</td>
<td>197 8</td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
<td>211</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAR</td>
<td>8 102</td>
<td>4 29</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>13 131</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AL</td>
<td>58 70</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>128</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PA</td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No place</td>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>TOTAL:</strong></td>
<td><strong>344 427</strong></td>
<td><strong>140 84</strong></td>
<td><strong>27</strong></td>
<td><strong>511 511</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**TABLE 4.2**

Second Part (Foreign) (1979-1984)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>KW</th>
<th>IR</th>
<th>SA</th>
<th>SE</th>
<th>MAR</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>JO</th>
<th>UAE</th>
<th>TN</th>
<th>AJ</th>
<th>OM</th>
<th>QT</th>
<th>FA</th>
<th>SO</th>
<th>BA</th>
<th>YA</th>
<th>TOTAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>000</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>24</td>
<td></td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>200</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>43</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>28</td>
<td></td>
<td>4</td>
<td>32</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>265</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>300</td>
<td>58</td>
<td>310</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>51</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td>539</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>400</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>500</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>74</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>-</td>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>600</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>203</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>47</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>287</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>700</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>800</td>
<td>72</td>
<td>169</td>
<td>47</td>
<td>139</td>
<td>43</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>55</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>628</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>900</td>
<td>38</td>
<td>114</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>281</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TOTAL</td>
<td>265</td>
<td>1074</td>
<td>134</td>
<td>297</td>
<td>98</td>
<td>47</td>
<td>150</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>150</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>2355</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**TABLE 4.3**

First Part 1979 (Arabic) General Publications
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Country Subject</th>
<th>MAR</th>
<th>KW</th>
<th>SA</th>
<th>JO</th>
<th>TN</th>
<th>SE</th>
<th>ER</th>
<th>AJ</th>
<th>UAE</th>
<th>LE</th>
<th>Total</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>000</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>200</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>41</td>
<td>73</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>287</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>300</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>49</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>105</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>386</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>400</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>500</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>600</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>53</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>700</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>800</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>74</td>
<td>138</td>
<td>118</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>89</td>
<td>48</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>534</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>900</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>TOTAL:</strong></td>
<td>152</td>
<td>72</td>
<td>291</td>
<td>331</td>
<td>298</td>
<td>51</td>
<td>390</td>
<td>119</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1720</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**TABLE 4.4**

First Part 1984 (Arabic) General Publications
5.1 HISTORY OF BIBLIOGRAPHY IN EGYPT

In 1894 Abdullah Al-Ansari published the first bibliographical work in Egypt entitled Jame'a Al-tasaneef Al-Masriyah Al-hadeethah, regarding retrospective bibliography (Chapter 2).

Later Yusuf Sarkis published two parts under the name Jame'a Al-tasaneef Al-hadeethah Allati Tubiat Fi Al-Bilad Al-Shargiyah wa Al-Gharbiyyah wa Al-Amrikiyyah (the compilation of modern Egyptian writing printed in the East, West and America). The first part was published in 1927 and covers the period between 1920 and 1926. The second part covering 1927 was issued in 1928 (Chapter 2).

Sarkis also published Mujam al-matbuat al-arabiyah wal-muarrabah. (Dictionnaire encyclopedie de bibliographie arabe) published in 1928 in 3 volumes (Chapter 2).

Later Aida Ibrahim Nusair published her book Al-Kutub al-Arabiya Allati nushirat fi Misr bayna Amay 1900-1925 (Arabic Books published in Egypt between 1900-1925), and another one entitled Al-kutub al-Arabiyyah Allati Nushirat fi Misr bayna Amay 1926-1940 (Arabic Books published in Egypt between 1926-1940). The bibliography is designed to carry on from the two works of Sarkis mentioned, but it is restricted to Egyptian publications. It has a classified arrangement,
with author and title indexes. Periodicals and official publications are excluded (Chapter 2).

There is also another bibliography by Ahmad M. Mansur, Shaban Kalifah, Muhammad F. Abdulhadi and Zaynab A. Awadlah, entitled Dalil al-matbuat al-misriya (Guide to Egyptian publications 1940-1956). Cairo American University 1975 419p. This is a continuation of Sarkis' and Aida's works. The organisation is according to DDC and the list entries are included in subject order. The bibliography contains 12170 books, 1626 theses, no government publications, and covers the period between 1940 and 1956. The information presented on every book is the name of the author, title of the book, place of publication, name of publisher, date of publication and pages. In the beginning there are 14 pages as introduction and also the book contains four indexes, author, title, subject and author indexes for theses.

From 1955, the National Book House (NBH) issued the Bulletin of Egyptian Publications (BEP) on a quarterly basis until December 1959, then in various volumes covering different periods:


As from January 1969, the House decided that the BEP should be published annually on a regular basis and a Legal Deposit Bulletin
would be issued on a monthly basis under the name Nashrat al-ida al-shahriyah.

Since January 1969 the bulletin has been issued describing in detail all publications deposited with the NBH. The bulletin covers the previous month. For instance, the January bulletin is published in February. All the monthly bulletins were issued in an annual one. This process continued until December 1973 when due to printing problems, the monthly bulletins did not appear in the annual one. Instead only author and title indexes were published.

From 1974, the bulletin was quarterly under the name Nashrat al-ida, (Legal Deposit Bulletin) (LDB) and at the end of 1974 the fourth volume came out as a collection including the previous quarterlies for 1974.

Since 1975, it has been a quarterly with the fourth issue including a cumulative index for the whole year; it also includes indexes of authors, titles, subjects and publishers. The bulletin comprises two sections, one Arabic, the other for foreign languages. The bulletin includes the main part, Government publications, children's books and school books.

5.2 PUBLISHER

Bibliography Administration, the National Book House, the General Egyptian Book Organisation, Al-Kurnish Street, Cairo.
5.3 NEED AND AIM

The bulletin aims to follow-up and cover the Egyptian published works which are deposited with the NEH in accordance with the regulations of the Publication Depository law.

5.4 SCOPE OF COVERAGE

The bulletin covers all works published in Egypt regardless of the language of the work or the nationality of the author.

5.4.1 Period of Coverage

The bulletin covers the period between 1955 and the present time and was issued in different forms covering five years, two years, one year, two months and quarterly, until it became a regular quarterly.

5.4.2 Subject Coverage

All subjects actually appearing in the books are covered.

The following tables give a clear idea of the development of the period and subject coverage (the introduction of printing in Egypt was in 1821).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Year</th>
<th>Number of books</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1947</td>
<td>546</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1948</td>
<td>548</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1949</td>
<td>657</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1950</td>
<td>561</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1951</td>
<td>568</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1952</td>
<td>532</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1953</td>
<td>654</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1954</td>
<td>697</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Before 1947 the latest figure available was that for 1900. This was a very small figure (34 books) probably due to the inaccuracy of coverage, as printing was introduced in Egypt seventy nine years earlier. It may also be due to the intellectual movement being in its infancy.

The increase of publications from 1947 to 1954 is due to such factors as [2]:

1. The establishment of the Egyptian University and later others which boosted intellectual activity.
2. Expansion of education, printing and publishing in Egypt.

Subjects published in Egypt between 1897 and 1901 were [3]:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Number of books</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Literature</td>
<td>102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>History</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Social Sciences</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Religion</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Applied Sciences</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Languages</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pure Sciences</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total</strong></td>
<td><strong>168</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

TABLE 5.2: PUBLICATIONS IN EGYPT 1897-1901

There are no publications on Philosophy, Arts, or General Knowledge.

The lack of scientific publications was because [4]:

1. Arabic was not the language for teaching science; thus there were no school books in Arabic.
2. People were not interested in Sciences in general as they saw no benefit in them at the time.

3. There was no group interested in Sciences that would seek to disseminate scientific writings regardless of obstacles.

Table 5.3 Published Arabic Egyptian Books, according to the BEP from 1955 to 1986 shows:

1. An increase in publications between 1961 and 1965 owing to the growing activity of the General Book Organisation which was publishing a book every six hours [5].

2. A decrease in publications in 1966-67 and 68 was due to the short supply of paper and other materials needed in the book industry. [6].

3. Leaving points 1 and 2 aside, we notice that the number of books produced was somewhat inconsistent and fluctuating. The lowest output was in 1981, not more than 1774, and the highest was 4280 in 1970. In that period of ten years, production remained between these numbers.

4. There was no language section for 1955-60 but it was added to the Book List for 1961-65.

6. The total publications varies from one period to another, but it should be noted that they were first collected in issues of more than one year, e.g. 1955-60, 1961-65, 1966-67. Then it became yearly 1968, 1969, 1970, 1971-72, and from 1973 it was issued monthly and afterwards quarterly.

7. There was the addition of Geography to History starting from the 1973 list and Law and Education appeared in independent sections for that one year only.

8. Addition of biographies to History and Geography starting from the 1976 list.


11. The total of publications in those years was dominated by Social Sciences 23.763%, then Literature 18.633%, Religion 14.889%, History, Geography and Biographies 12.159%, and Applied Sciences 11.691%.

The youngest disciplines and lowest in production are Eastern Languages, Law and Education. These were only mentioned in certain years and their production was on a limited scale. The lowest productions are Pure Science 7.780%, Languages 3.886%, Philosophy 3.035%, Fine Arts 2.589%, and finally General Knowledge 1.527%.
12. In Social Sciences 23.763%, the production has not shown much increase, although it started high and has been the highest almost every year. Works of Literature and Religion have increased since the beginning.

13. Putting Law, Education and Eastern Languages aside because of their lesser significance, we notice that there is a low production in General Knowledge, Arts and Pure Sciences. This is in spite of the fact that these are important disciplines, especially Pure Sciences.

14. Considering that the population of Egypt is according to the 1987 census 51,900,000 [7], the literate among them constituting 50.6%, and the total production of 1987 was not more than 4838 books, while the global production until 1987 was 88198 books, then it is a low production. The total of the literate Egyptian population is approximately 25,950,000. Taking this figure and the 1987 book production we can calculate as follows:

\[
\frac{4838}{25,950,000} = 0.0001864
\]

That means that on average every one has much less than one book.

15. Tables 5.4 to 5.9 pertain to the distribution of books, for published Arabic Egyptian books from 1955-86 (main parts), 5.4, published Arabic and English Egyptian books to years 1987-1988 (all parts) statistics from legal depository department in ENIL, 5.5, children and young people 5.6, Government publications 5.7, the English sections 5.8 and 5.9.
5.4.3 Types of Coverage

The Bulletin issued in Egypt covers all publications in any language except periodicals. It started including Government publications in a separate section in 1970.

The children and young people's and school books were included in one section from 1955 to 1968 and then split into two sections from 1969.

5.5 ORGANISATION

The Bulletin appears in two volumes. The major one is devoted to Arabic publications, the other deals with the publications in foreign languages, English being the main one.

The Arabic volume includes the following sections:

1. The major section includes publications by commercial publishing houses. These are listed under subject headings.

2. The Government publications section has been an independent section since 1970. This section pertains to everything published by Governmental and Public institutions.

3. The School book section has been an independent section since 1969. It deals with the books published by the Ministry of Education.

4. Children and young people's books became an independent section in 1969. It consists of fairy tales, novels, etc.
For each section there are four different indexes to help the user in locating his required item.

1. Author index: ordered alphabetically according to the author's name. Each entry bears a letter code for each section e.g. G Government Publications  
   S School Publications  
   C Children and young people's books  

2. Title index: ordered alphabetically according to the book titles.

3. Subject Heading Index: ordered alphabetically according to the subjects.

4. Index of printers and publishers: ordered alphabetically according to the names of printers and publishers.

The foreign part has similarly been divided into the above sections with their relevant indexes.

The four sections of the bulletin lists the subjects according to DDC with slight modifications required by the nature of the western intellectual works and other factors such as language, religion, literature and history.

Under the subject headings, cards or entries are ordered alphabetically according to the author names which are compatible with "the United List of Arab Authors entries with the references prepared by the Egyptian Association for Documentation and Libraries" [8].

112
- There is a serial numbering for each card within the first and second sections.
- The English part takes new numbering.
- With the 1969 volume, DDC was adopted for each card.

5.6 BIBLIOGRAPHICAL ENTRIES

The main entry in the bulletin was by titles from 1955, then by author's names from 1970 up to the present time.

This latter method has followed the following principles [9]:

A - The early authors who lived before 1800 (AD) were entered under their pen-name e.g. Ibn Al-qayyim Al-Juziya, Shams Al-din Abu Abdullah Muhammad Bn Abi Bakir Bn Ayyub Bn Sad Bn Hariz.

B - Authors who lived after 1800 were entered by full names due to some family names not yet being established e.g. Ibrahim Al-Abyari, Fathi Ridwan.

The Government Publications were all entered under the Arab Republic of Egypt, since they were all issued in Egypt.

5.7 BIBLIOGRAPHICAL DESCRIPTION

In the bibliographical description, International Standards of Bibliographical Description (ISBD) have been used since 1981. This was in accordance with the recommendation of the Arab Book
Bibliography Compilation Conference held in Riyadh between 24/11/1973 to 1/12/1973. (Children and Young people's books and School books were described in a simple manner). Every card contains the title of the book, name of the author, names of the co-authors or translators, editors, place of publication, date of publication, number of pages, table of contents, name of series, number of books in series, and price of book.

In the right hand corner at the bottom of the card, there is the order number of the book from the stock of the House, on the left, there is the DDC number. On the right of the card, beside the title, there is the serial number of the entry, and since 1975 the ISBN has been inserted above the order number. Egypt obtained its one million number share of the ISBN in 1975. The first one is 977,000,000 and the last is 977,999,999.

There is a list of abbreviations in the bibliographic description in the beginning of the bulletin. It shows the meanings of these abbreviations:

\[ j = \text{juz' (part)}, \quad jd = \text{jadwal (table)}, \quad S = \text{Safha (page)}, \quad T = \text{Tabaah (edition)}, \text{etc.} \]

5.8 OBSERVATIONS

- The Bulletin is one of the oldest National Bibliographies in the Arab World. It has been issued since 1955.
The publication of the Bulletin is not always very prompt, information for a certain quarter of the year appearing some months later. The delay may be due to printing problems which diminish the efficiency of the Bulletin and may sometimes hinder its objectives.

The title of the Bulletin has taken different names and appeared at different intervals. It has appeared as follows:

a) The BEP for the annual issues, Nashrat al-ida Al-Masryyah.


c) Legal Deposit Bulletin for the quarterly issues up to now, Nashrat al-ida.

Reviewing the early issues of the Bulletin, the researcher has noticed that some data are not complete. This may be the fault of the publishers or the lack of trained staff. In the recent years however, the issues have become near complete because the publication is physically vetted "on its deposition" and the staff now have more experience.

There was some improvement in the organisation of the Bulletin between 1955 and 1970, then came the considerable modifications in 1981. The quality of the paper was improved, the publication was better organised, and the introduction was more detailed in its explanations for users etc.
- It adopted the Arabic version of DDC in the classification, it used Mahmoud AL-Shaniti and Muhammad Al-Mahdi's cataloguing rules until 1980.

- The publication for one term does not mean that it covers all the issues which have appeared in that term. However, it includes all the publications deposited before the publication of the bulletin.

- In 1975, the ISBN was added to the cards.

- In 1981, the ISBD was adopted.

- The bulletin does not cover any books published abroad.

- No reason can be found for putting the school books in an independent section since 1969.

- Most English books in the foreign part are translations; few of them are by Arab authors.

- It is noticed that volume 55-60 has no index and the annual volume of 1968 has no introduction or explanatory notes.

5.9 DEPOSITORY LAW IN EGYPT

Egypt has had several publication laws in its history. We shall review some of the main points pertaining to these laws.
The first law concerning publication affairs was passed in 1823 [10] during the rule of Muhammed Ali Basha, who decreed that every publication required his express permit before going out to print. The aim of the permit was to ensure that no publication involved religious material or opposed the policy of Egypt at the time.

The first Publication Law was issued on 1 January 1858 [11]. It states that before publishing a work it should be controlled by the Department of Interior, to avoid any offence to religion or the state's interests or those of other countries.

In its third article, it mentions that the printing house must abide by the terms agreed upon with the publisher concerning the item they want to publish.

The second law was not different in principle from the first one. A new article stated that the number of copies declared to be printed should not be exceeded in order that the rights of the parties were protected.

On 16 November 1881 [12], another law was passed which stated in its article three:

"Printers may not print any publication before submitting an application which shows their intention of printing the newspaper* to the Administration of Publication in the Interior Administration. He also may not put any newspapers on sale before the deposition of five copies with the aforementioned administration".

* meaning books and letters which are not periodical and periodicals which are published every month or more ...
This law contains many important points worth considering here.

A - Article three specifies that three copies should be deposited with the Publication Administration in the Interior Ministry from where a licence should be procured before printing.

B - There is a fine if the law is breached (Article 5).

C - Emphasis is laid on the correct name and home address of the writer to be written on every publication with a fine for non-compliance. This shows control over publications issued in the country (Article 6).

D - The fine in articles 5 and 6 may be substituted by closing the printing house altogether (Article 7).

In 1936 [13], Law number 20 was passed. Article four of this now states that names and addresses of both the printer and publisher should be mentioned on the publication. Also shown should be the date of publication on the first or last page. Article five provides expressly that four copies of every publication should be deposited with the authorities where publication takes place. A receipt should be obtained on deposition.

Article five was extended to increase the number of copies required for deposition from 4 to 10. These were distributed to the four Universities, the Egyptian Book House, The Municipal Library of Alexandria, Publication Administration in the Ministry of Information and 3 further copies to the Ministry of Information. Deposition should be made immediately after publication.
It should be remarked that deposition aimed at controlling publications to ensure respect for public laws, decency and religion. Another aim was to provide libraries with free copies.

In 1956, Law number 375 was passed [14]. Article four of this law states that:

"On the first or last page of each publication must be printed the name and address of the printer, and address of the publisher if different from that of the printer, and date of printing."

Article five provides that:

"At the release of every publication, 10 copies 'after modification' must be deposited with the Governor's Administration in the Directorate of the region where publication takes place. A receipt is delivered on deposition."

Article six states that "articles five and six do not apply to publications of private or commercial character." By 'private' is meant prints for personal use regardless of the number of copies such as lawyers' bulletins used in the courts. By 'commercial' is meant publicity leaflets, instructions and sample catalogues, etc.

In 1954, Law number 354 [15] was passed. It required the publishers of compilations which were to be published to deposit, within one month of the publication date, five copies with the Egyptian Book House. Any breach of this law was to be penalised by a fine which did not exceed 25 Egyptian pounds.
The one month period was determined by the ministerial decree number 439 on August 11, 1955.

An amendment was introduced to the law, by which the number of copies to be deposited was increased to 10 copies, 9 of which go to the Egyptian Book House and 1 copy to the Library of People's Council (Egyptian Parliament). This law aims at the protection of author's copyright, the enrichment of the Egyptian Book House and providing the People's Council with a copy of every publication.

In 1968, Law number 14 was passed [16] to amend certain regulations of the copyright protection. In its first article, it states that the author, the printer and the publisher should cooperate to deposit 10 copies at their own expense. The law requires that deposition should take place immediately before the circulation of publications.

Article three states that:

"Publishers and printers of compilations mentioned in article one must display on the last page of every copy the following information

a - Date of publication
b - Number and date of deposition with the National Book and Document House..."

Article four requires Egyptian authors who publish their works outside Egypt to deposit 5 copies with the Headquarters of the National Book and Document House in Cairo within three months of the publication date.
Article five requires the depositor to enclose, with the deposited copies, two copies of a declaration which includes:

a - Title of work
b - Authors's name
c - Name and address of publisher
d - Number and date of printing
e - Number of numbered pages and number of additional non-numbered pages
f - Size in centimetres
g - Number of copies to be published
h - Price of one copy
i - Name of author and title of publication in the language it appeared and underneath its translation.

This concerns translated works only.

Article seven of this law requires the National Book and Document House to provide the People's Council with one of the deposited copies.

Article eight reduced the number of the deposited copies to a minimum of 5 for publications which did not exceed 200 copies on circulation.

Article ten states that a minimum of 5 Egyptian pounds and a maximum fine of 25E pounds should be paid by those who break the regulations.

It is worth noting that this law is more comprehensive and explicit in that it includes all the basic principles of deposition such as place
of deposition, the number of copies to be deposited, distribution of copies, penalty for failure to deposit and period of deposition.

5.10 STUDY

Having given an overall summary of ENB covering different periods of its publication, it is necessary to consider the extent to which the ENB actually applied at least the two basic systems ISBN and ISBD. This is because in this comparative study we wish to examine examples of the employment of such systems to judge their possible usefulness in a Saudi National Bibliography.

5.10.1 Choosing Samples

Samples were selected at random from "Legal Deposit Bulletin". The study has focused on two quarterly issues:

1. July, August, September 1978
2. January, February, March 1984

5.10.2 The Reason for the Choice of these Two Specific Periods

1. The first issue (i.e., Summer 1978) was published three years after introducing ISBN. This guarantees that there had been ample time to test the viability of applying the new system.

2. The second issue (i.e., Winter 1984) was published three years after the application of ISBD; again a choice which gives a long enough time to have tested and practised the system.
5.10.3 Why Quarterly and not Annual?

It is well known that compared with other Arab countries, Egypt has a high annual figure for books published. For example, 380 books appeared in the main section of the 1978 bulletin and 329 books in the main section of the 1984 bulletin. Besides, this study is basically concerned with the actual application of both ISBD and ISBN and the choice of sampling periods was considered sufficiently long.

5.10.4 The Reasons for Using ISBD and ISBN in the Test

1. The recommendation of the Pan-Arab Publications-Exchange Committee, in the meeting held in Damascus on 22-28 June 1957, in which article E states:

"The author's card or cards are the main cards which bear the data according to the following order"

"Full name of author, title of publication, edition, place of printing, publisher, date of publication, number of the numbered pages, number of the unnumbered pages, size of publication..."

2. In the conference on Arabic Book Bibliographical Description held in Riyadh from 24.11.1973 to 01.12.1973, it was recommended that all libraries and bibliographical agencies should make the necessary arrangements to use the ISBD in all the cataloguing and bibliographical work as soon as possible. Article 13 of the recommendations on bibliography includes:
"The conference recommends that Arab publishers and printers should state the necessary publication information (place of publication, publisher, printer, date of publication...)

3. Article 5 of the last Egyptian depository law, in paragraph 48 of law number 354 of 1954, amended by law number 14 of 1968, required the depositor to enclose with the copies two dated copies of a certified confirmation stating the following:

a) title of work
b) author's name
c) name and address of publisher
d) number and date of edition
e) number of numbered pages and number of tables, etc that were not included in the numbered pages
f) size in centimetres
g) number of copies to be published
h) price of a single copy
i) the author's name and the editor's original source language in the case of translated works.


"13. The national bibliographical agency should undertake responsibility for preparing the comprehensive bibliographical records of its national imprint and in so doing follow international cataloguing principles and adopt international bibliographic standards, specifically the ISBDs, and international numbering systems such as ISBN and ISSN; should maintain a control system for national names, personal and corporate, and uniform
titles in accordance with international guidelines; and should consider the adoption of an internationally used classification scheme for the records" [17].

In part III there is an international framework for the National Bibliographic Agency, agreed objectives, functions, and basis.

Functions 3.1.3 [18]

"In preparing the authoritative bibliographical records noted above, the agency accepts and implements:

International bibliographic standards and codes and internationally accepted bibliographic practices such as:
International Standard Bibliographic Description (ISBD)
International Standard Book Number (ISBN)
International Standard Serial Number (ISSN)"

5. The revision of ISBD provides the following [19]:

The ISBD Area and Element:

1. Title and statement of responsibility area:

   Title proper, general material designation, parallel title, other title information, statements of responsibility (first statement, subsequent statement).
2. Edition Area:

3. Material (or type of specific area)

4. Publication, Distribution, etc, Area:
   4.1 Place of publication, distribution, etc. First place, subsequent place.
   4.2 Name of publisher, distributor, etc.
   4.3 Statement of function of publisher, distributor, etc
   4.4 Date of publication, distribution, etc
   4.5 Place of manufacture
   4.6 Name of manufacturer
   4.7 Date of manufacture

5. Physical Description Area:
Specific material designation and extent of item, other physical details, dimensions of item, accompanying material statement.

6. Series Area
7. Note Area

8. Standard Number (or alternative) and Terms of Availability
   8.1 Standard number (or alternative)
   8.2 Key title
   8.3 Terms of availability and/or price
   8.4 Qualification (in varying positions)

- Almost 32 years after recommendations were issued by the Pan-Arab Publication Exchange Committee, 16 years since the conference on Arabic Book Bibliography Description held in Riyadh, 21 years since the depository law was passed in Egypt, and 12 years after the recommendations of the Paris Conference, Egypt as one of the pioneering Arab countries in publishing the National Bibliography should have provided a good example of the extent to which the ENB was able to apply both systems, ISBN and ISBD. In the introduction to the Legal Deposit Bulletin, it is mentioned that ISBN was added in 1975, and ISBD was first applied in 1981.

5.10.5 Methodology

- Examining each book (card) to see the bibliographical information stated on it.
- Observing the extent to which ISBD is applied on each card, as well as the application of punctuation for each book.
5.10.6 Study (1)


1. The Main Section (in Arabic) includes 380 books classified according to Ten Divisions. Table 5.10 demonstrates the bibliographical data mentioned on or missing from the main section cards:

2. The School Book section (Arabic) includes 178 books, and Children and Young People's book section (Arabic) includes 28 books. Table 5.11 shows the bibliographical information (mentioned or otherwise) in each card:

3. The non-Arabic section includes the Main section (42 books) and the School Book section (41 books). Table 5.12 shows the bibliographical information on each card:

The following remarks could be made about Table 5.10:

4. Date of publishing percentage is 100%, although 11 cards mentioned the date between brackets.

5. The publisher and place of publication amounted to equal percentages of 26%. Only one book missed out on these two.
6. Although the study was carried out three years after the application of ISBN, 85 cards, that is 22.36% of the total did not mention ISBN.

7. There is a high percentage of the books in which the price is missing, 49.21%. This lack of information in a bibliography can be an obstacle, especially for other Arab countries who wish to purchase the books.

8. The edition number can be helpful in indicating any changes in form or content. Yet we find that 81.57% of the books examined did not mention the edition. This should be the responsibility of the publishers who must make sure the bibliographical information is complete before publishing the new edition.

Table 5.13 shows the year of distribution of publications in each section.

9. In the Main Section there are five books in which two different years are mentioned, 1977, 1978. Also two books in the School section have the years 1976, 1977 and one book in the school section has the years 1977, 1978 mentioned. This may be due to an error on the part of the publisher or the ENB itself.

Table 5.14 shows the place distribution of publications in each section.
10. There are 29 translated books (non-Arabic/into Arabic) in the Main section, 3 in the school section, 1 in the young children section.

11. There are 32 books (cards) with full bibliographic information in the Main Section, which makes a percentage of 8.42% and one book only in the non-Arabic Main Section.

12. Punctuation marks are not examined because they are not used in the bibliography.

13. There is one book in which it is mentioned that there is no serial number. It is in the school section, book No. 479.

14. There are 28 French books in the Non-Arabic section distributed as follows: 10 books in the Main Section and 18 books in the School Section.

15. There are no governmental publications in the bibliography.

16. In Table 5.11, there are the following percentages of books (from the School Section) where some of the bibliographical information is missing: edition: 99.43%, copy price 73.59%, ISBN: 61.23%.

In almost all the books, place of publication, publishers and date of publication are mentioned. Similar figures to the above applied to the children's books.
17. Table 5.12 shows the non-Arabic section. There are few books written in languages other than Arabic, and the edition number, the copy price and the ISBN are not mentioned in most cases. That applies to both Main and School Books sections.

18. Despite the fact that the bulletin covers books published in July, August and September 1978, it includes a few books printed in 1964, 1974 and 1975. A majority of the books are printed in 1978, (61.58%) and some in 1977 (35.42%), see Table 5.11.

19. Table 5.14 clearly shows that in comparison with other cities, Cairo is the city with the largest number of published books.

20. Book title and author are mentioned on all cards.

5.10.7 Study (2)


1. The Main Section (Arabic) includes 329 books, classified according to the Ten Divisions. Table 5.15 shows the bibliographical information on the cards of the main section.

2. The School Section (Arabic) includes 146 books and Children's Books include 32 books classified under the Ten Divisions. Table 5.16 shows the bibliographical information mentioned on or missing from each card.
Table 5.17 shows bibliographical information on both governmental publications and non-Arabic section books.

Table 5.18 shows the year of distribution of publications in each section.

Table 5.19 shows the place distribution of publications in each section.

From Table 5.15 we can note the following:

1. There is a high percentage of books in which there is no mention of edition number, 75.98%. Price is mentioned in 98 books out of 329 books.

2. There is a surprising increase in the percentage of books missing out the ISBN in this bulletin. It increased for no obvious reason, from 22.36% in the previous bibliography to 63.22% in the present one. Information about publishers and place of publication is in 22.49% and 22.62% of books respectively.

3. The use of brackets for place of publication amounts to 30.69% and for date of publication 25.83%.

Table 5.16 indicates the following:

4. In the School section, out of the total of books examined, for 95.89% there is no mention of the edition number. This applies also to 46.87% of the children's books. This is a high percentage taking into consideration the total number of books in each section and that the period covers three months only.

132
5. There are 97 books in the school section in which the place of publication is not certain. This is considered a high number in view of the total number.

6. The ISBN is mentioned in this section more than in the other sections.

7. The price is scarcely mentioned in either section. It might be understandable for the school section since the books are free, but what about children's books?

8. Date of publication is mentioned in all books in both sections.

9. The researcher was not sure of the reason for separating school books from children's books since both have a similar function.

Table 5.17 shows that:

10. The number of governmental publications is limited but the bibliographical information percentage is quite high, though ISBN is not mentioned in 9 out of 10 books.

11. The Non-Arabic Section has few publications, 30 books, distributed equally between Main and School sections.
12. In the Non-Arabic Section books, the number of edition is often not mentioned, in 80%, neither is the price, which is never mentioned in any book examined. Absence of ISBN is 86.66% despite the limited number of publications.

13. In the School Section, books missing out the ISBN reached 33.33% and edition 100%.

Table 5.18 shows that:

14. There are books that were delayed for years (since 1980, 1981, 1982) before they were published. This might be owing to problems in printing or for other reasons.

15. A high percentage of books were printed in 1983 (about 69.81%) and some in 1984 (22.77%).

Table 5.19 shows:

16. The majority of printing was carried out in Cairo, whereas other cities, even Alexandria, have a very limited percentage in comparison.

5.10.8 General Remarks

1. There are books in which dates are mentioned at the end of the Introduction whereas dates of publication are not mentioned, (books Nos 2, 29, 95, 124, 189, 205).
2. There are books with two different dates of publication, (1984, 1983), (books Nos 9, 133, 152, 172, 225).

3. In certain cases where the publisher and place of publication are not mentioned, the printing company and place of printing are mentioned instead, (books Nos 27, 30, 32, 33).

There are, however, various different cases such as:
- Some books mentioned both the printing company name and place and the publisher and place of publication, where the two are different (books Nos 40, 125).
- The printing place is mentioned in some books between brackets despite the fact that the printing company's name is known (books Nos 46, 58, 59, 36, 107).
- In some books, the printing company's name and place are not mentioned at all (books Nos 43, 52, 189, 192, 204, 239, 258, 260, 271).

4. Although the date of publication is mentioned in some books, there is another date between brackets [ ] with the word correct beside it.

5. There are two different dates, one at the end of the Introduction and another given as the date of publication, e.g. in book No 63, the date of publication is 1983, and the date of the Introduction is 1984.
6. There is one Introductory summary only, for book No 155: the rest have no such summary.

7. There are numbers mentioned between brackets [ ] for some of the ISBN numbers, (books Nos 193, 150).

8. In the main section (Arabic) the bulletin has only ten books with full bibliographical information, that is only 3.03%. There is also only one book in the School Section (Arabic) and 17 books in the Children's books section which have such full information.

9. There are 27 books translated into Arabic and 40 French books in the non-Arabic section.

10. Punctuation marks are complete on all cards and are all used accurately.

11. Title of book and name of author are mentioned on all cards.

SUMMARY

ENB is one of the oldest Arab bibliographies to be published. It was first used in 1955 and is still being published. The publication mentioned varied over different periods. Now it is being published as a periodical, once every three months. Over these years, many laws and regulations have been issued covering different aspects of publication, depository and number of deposited copies. The latter is now agreed to be 10 copies for each publication of minimum 200 copies.
Despite the recommendations of different Arab and international conferences and the bibliographical laws, both local and international, and despite the status of ENB in the Arab countries, we find that there is a high percentage of missing bibliographical information and ISBN in the books examined. This might be due to various reasons including the lack of trained staff.

The researcher has benefited from the experience that the study of ENB has offered him, and the findings of his work in no way jeopardise the value and status of ENB.
REFERENCES


2. Ibid. p.36.

3. Ibid. p.57.

4. Ibid. p.58.

5. Ibid. p.36.

6. Ibid. p.37.


11. Ibid. p.138.
12. Ibid. p.141.


16. COPY of the Law obtained from Department of Deposition in the National Book House in Egypt.


<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Year</th>
<th>55-60</th>
<th>61-65</th>
<th>66-70</th>
<th>67-70</th>
<th>71-74</th>
<th>75-76</th>
<th>77-78</th>
<th>79-80</th>
<th>81-82</th>
<th>83-84</th>
<th>85-86</th>
<th>Total</th>
<th>100%</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>000</td>
<td>318</td>
<td>224</td>
<td>73</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>42</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>68</td>
<td>37</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>37</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100</td>
<td>346</td>
<td>392</td>
<td>198</td>
<td>99</td>
<td>104</td>
<td>114</td>
<td>118</td>
<td>112</td>
<td>74</td>
<td>101</td>
<td>124</td>
<td>77</td>
<td>77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>200</td>
<td>599</td>
<td>1264</td>
<td>747</td>
<td>409</td>
<td>419</td>
<td>747</td>
<td>656</td>
<td>590</td>
<td>761</td>
<td>561</td>
<td>621</td>
<td>405</td>
<td>395</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>300</td>
<td>1971</td>
<td>3584</td>
<td>1979</td>
<td>702</td>
<td>795</td>
<td>1132</td>
<td>1127</td>
<td>939</td>
<td>863</td>
<td>860</td>
<td>1083</td>
<td>574</td>
<td>425</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>400</td>
<td>-452</td>
<td>511</td>
<td>105</td>
<td>123</td>
<td>170</td>
<td>157</td>
<td>140</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>145</td>
<td>150</td>
<td>79</td>
<td>72</td>
<td>98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>500</td>
<td>497</td>
<td>1111</td>
<td>168</td>
<td>210</td>
<td>249</td>
<td>346</td>
<td>315</td>
<td>289</td>
<td>332</td>
<td>298</td>
<td>471</td>
<td>202</td>
<td>218</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>600</td>
<td>654</td>
<td>2015</td>
<td>824</td>
<td>424</td>
<td>383</td>
<td>468</td>
<td>409</td>
<td>438</td>
<td>494</td>
<td>390</td>
<td>406</td>
<td>316</td>
<td>256</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>700</td>
<td>96</td>
<td>342</td>
<td>157</td>
<td>49</td>
<td>81</td>
<td>106</td>
<td>148</td>
<td>113</td>
<td>84</td>
<td>115</td>
<td>115</td>
<td>59</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>800</td>
<td>1654</td>
<td>3024</td>
<td>1291</td>
<td>605</td>
<td>542</td>
<td>679</td>
<td>753</td>
<td>510</td>
<td>460</td>
<td>490</td>
<td>689</td>
<td>447</td>
<td>490</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>900</td>
<td>1913</td>
<td>1803</td>
<td>822</td>
<td>339</td>
<td>381</td>
<td>476</td>
<td>428</td>
<td>331</td>
<td>348</td>
<td>363</td>
<td>428</td>
<td>253</td>
<td>270</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Law</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Education</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TOTAL</td>
<td>8048</td>
<td>14301</td>
<td>6770</td>
<td>2969</td>
<td>3111</td>
<td>4280</td>
<td>4147</td>
<td>3491</td>
<td>3620</td>
<td>3360</td>
<td>4117</td>
<td>2449</td>
<td>2298</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

TABLE 5.3: PUBLISHED ARABIC EGYPTIAN BOOKS FROM 1955-1986 ALL PARTS
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Year</th>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>55-60</th>
<th>61-65</th>
<th>66-70</th>
<th>67-71</th>
<th>72-73</th>
<th>74-75</th>
<th>76-77</th>
<th>78-79</th>
<th>80-81</th>
<th>82-83</th>
<th>84-85</th>
<th>86-87</th>
<th>Total</th>
<th>100%</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>000</td>
<td></td>
<td>138</td>
<td>220</td>
<td>72</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>63</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100</td>
<td></td>
<td>346</td>
<td>355</td>
<td>191</td>
<td>95</td>
<td>86</td>
<td>60.112</td>
<td>92</td>
<td>64</td>
<td>92</td>
<td>99</td>
<td>68</td>
<td>53</td>
<td>99</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>300</td>
<td></td>
<td>1895</td>
<td>3322</td>
<td>1913</td>
<td>648</td>
<td>609</td>
<td>649</td>
<td>675</td>
<td>573</td>
<td>529</td>
<td>592</td>
<td>792</td>
<td>382</td>
<td>286</td>
<td>391</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>400</td>
<td></td>
<td>93</td>
<td>376</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>38</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>55</td>
<td>41</td>
<td>33</td>
<td>54</td>
<td>101</td>
<td>138</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>41</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>500</td>
<td></td>
<td>209</td>
<td>519</td>
<td>102</td>
<td>112</td>
<td>139</td>
<td>114</td>
<td>83</td>
<td>106</td>
<td>105</td>
<td>278</td>
<td>193</td>
<td>42</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>600</td>
<td></td>
<td>569</td>
<td>1587</td>
<td>745</td>
<td>390</td>
<td>317</td>
<td>294</td>
<td>270</td>
<td>234</td>
<td>237</td>
<td>213</td>
<td>307</td>
<td>109</td>
<td>170</td>
<td>185</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>700</td>
<td></td>
<td>92</td>
<td>291</td>
<td>143</td>
<td>47</td>
<td>76</td>
<td>84</td>
<td>101</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>55</td>
<td>74</td>
<td>86</td>
<td>46</td>
<td>42</td>
<td>63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>800</td>
<td></td>
<td>1207</td>
<td>2063</td>
<td>962</td>
<td>408</td>
<td>377</td>
<td>518</td>
<td>551</td>
<td>342</td>
<td>321</td>
<td>275</td>
<td>514</td>
<td>372</td>
<td>301</td>
<td>398</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>900</td>
<td></td>
<td>1051</td>
<td>1549</td>
<td>757</td>
<td>310</td>
<td>308</td>
<td>399</td>
<td>339</td>
<td>250</td>
<td>269</td>
<td>273</td>
<td>342</td>
<td>197</td>
<td>196</td>
<td>223</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Law</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Education</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eastern languages</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TOTAL</td>
<td></td>
<td>6106</td>
<td>11043</td>
<td>5803</td>
<td>2388</td>
<td>2318</td>
<td>2852</td>
<td>2758</td>
<td>2168</td>
<td>2237</td>
<td>2208</td>
<td>3073</td>
<td>1727</td>
<td>1456</td>
<td>1982</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**TABLE 5.4: PUBLISHED ARABIC EGYPTIAN BOOKS FROM 1955-1985 (MAIN PART)**
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject Year Part</th>
<th>000</th>
<th>100</th>
<th>200</th>
<th>300</th>
<th>400</th>
<th>500</th>
<th>600</th>
<th>700</th>
<th>800</th>
<th>900</th>
<th>Eastern languages</th>
<th>Total</th>
<th>Total</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ARABIC</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1987</td>
<td>56</td>
<td>151</td>
<td>1186</td>
<td>1034</td>
<td>128</td>
<td>259</td>
<td>295</td>
<td>69</td>
<td>935</td>
<td>340</td>
<td></td>
<td>4453</td>
<td>9368</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1988</td>
<td>63</td>
<td>145</td>
<td>1334</td>
<td>1034</td>
<td>184</td>
<td>243</td>
<td>391</td>
<td>97</td>
<td>1027</td>
<td>395</td>
<td></td>
<td>4915</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1987</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>65</td>
<td>133</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>59</td>
<td>47</td>
<td></td>
<td>385</td>
<td>760</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1988</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>68</td>
<td>111</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>57</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>29</td>
<td></td>
<td>375</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**TABLE 5.5:** PUBLISHED ARABIC AND ENGLISH EGYPTIAN BOOKS TO YEARS 1987-88 ALL PARTS  
(from Legal Deposit Department)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Department/Year/Subject</th>
<th>Children's Books and School Books</th>
<th>15-60</th>
<th>61-65</th>
<th>66-67</th>
<th>68</th>
<th>69</th>
<th>70</th>
<th>71</th>
<th>72</th>
<th>73</th>
<th>74</th>
<th>75</th>
<th>76</th>
<th>77</th>
<th>78</th>
<th>79</th>
<th>80</th>
<th>81</th>
<th>82</th>
<th>83</th>
<th>84</th>
<th>85</th>
<th>86</th>
<th>TOTAL</th>
<th>100%</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>000</td>
<td></td>
<td>180</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100</td>
<td></td>
<td>37</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>41</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>200</td>
<td></td>
<td>220</td>
<td>103</td>
<td>88</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>92</td>
<td>85</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>67</td>
<td>37</td>
<td>52</td>
<td>44</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>53</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>72</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>111</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>46</td>
<td>56</td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>300</td>
<td></td>
<td>262</td>
<td>66</td>
<td>54</td>
<td>182</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>291</td>
<td>228</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>208</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>218</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>161</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>205</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>205</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>106</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>195</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>138</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>400</td>
<td></td>
<td>253</td>
<td>49</td>
<td>135</td>
<td>65</td>
<td>85</td>
<td>116</td>
<td>93</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>96</td>
<td>65</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>84</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>48</td>
<td>77</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>33</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>57</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>44</td>
<td>47</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>500</td>
<td></td>
<td>288</td>
<td>592</td>
<td>168</td>
<td>108</td>
<td>127</td>
<td>109</td>
<td>199</td>
<td>181</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>195</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>219</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>190</td>
<td>188</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>148</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>220</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>203</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>600</td>
<td></td>
<td>85</td>
<td>428</td>
<td>79</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>62</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>118</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>89</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>87</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>110</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>103</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>69</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>201</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>127</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>700</td>
<td></td>
<td>4</td>
<td>51</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>37</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>37</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>49</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>800</td>
<td></td>
<td>194</td>
<td>561</td>
<td>329</td>
<td>197</td>
<td>273</td>
<td>138</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>123</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>152</td>
<td>67</td>
<td>101</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>102</td>
<td>53</td>
<td>162</td>
<td>84</td>
<td>91</td>
<td>63</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>154</td>
<td>110</td>
<td>107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>900</td>
<td></td>
<td>862</td>
<td>254</td>
<td>65</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>71</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>68</td>
<td>63</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>64</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>67</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>68</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>74</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>55</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>58</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| TOTAL                   |                                  | 516   | 177   | 947   | 168 | 832 | 228 | 846 | 162 | 817 | 177 | 749 | 196 | 802 | 115 | 621 | 53 | 569 | 240 | 954 | 157 | 760 | 212 | 609 | 116 | 566 | 133 | 554 | 149 | 556 | 102 | 633 | 125 | 553 | 122 | 417 | 154 | 21945|
|                         |                                  | 793   | 1115  | 1060  | 1000 | 994 | 945 | 917 | 674 | 809 | 1111 | 972 | 725 | 699 | 713 | 658 | 758 | 675 | 571 |

*TABLE 5.6: BOOKS FOR CHILDREN AND YOUNG PEOPLE AND SCHOOL BOOKS*
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Year</th>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>70</th>
<th>71</th>
<th>72</th>
<th>73</th>
<th>74</th>
<th>75</th>
<th>76</th>
<th>77</th>
<th>78</th>
<th>79</th>
<th>80</th>
<th>81</th>
<th>82</th>
<th>83</th>
<th>84</th>
<th>85</th>
<th>86</th>
<th>Total</th>
<th>100</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>000</td>
<td></td>
<td>13</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100</td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>0.149</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>200</td>
<td></td>
<td>23</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>300</td>
<td></td>
<td>192</td>
<td>223</td>
<td>157</td>
<td>115</td>
<td>105</td>
<td>86</td>
<td>42</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>51</td>
<td>38</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>38</td>
<td>41</td>
<td>1239</td>
<td>61.549</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>400</td>
<td></td>
<td>4</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>500</td>
<td></td>
<td>8</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>600</td>
<td></td>
<td>55</td>
<td>48</td>
<td>117</td>
<td>141</td>
<td>73</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>502</td>
<td>24.937</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>700</td>
<td></td>
<td>6</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>800</td>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>900</td>
<td></td>
<td>9</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Law</td>
<td></td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Education</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**TOTAL:** 313 329 315 299 207 127 48 33 34 60 46 24 17 30 38 46 47 2013

**TABLE 5.7: GOVERNMENT PUBLICATIONS**
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Years</th>
<th>61-65</th>
<th>66-67</th>
<th>68</th>
<th>69</th>
<th>70</th>
<th>71</th>
<th>72</th>
<th>73</th>
<th>74</th>
<th>75</th>
<th>76</th>
<th>77</th>
<th>78</th>
<th>79</th>
<th>TOTAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Title of book</td>
<td>1272</td>
<td>904</td>
<td>361</td>
<td>357</td>
<td>635</td>
<td>1050</td>
<td>570</td>
<td>596</td>
<td>515</td>
<td>397</td>
<td>272</td>
<td>328</td>
<td>253</td>
<td>262</td>
<td>7772</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section Year Subject</td>
<td>Main Section</td>
<td>School Books</td>
<td>Main Section</td>
<td>School Books</td>
<td>Government Publications</td>
<td>Children's Books</td>
<td>Main Section</td>
<td>School Books</td>
<td>Children's Books</td>
<td>Main Section</td>
<td>School Books</td>
<td>Children's Books</td>
<td>Main Section</td>
<td>School Books</td>
<td>Children's Books</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>-------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>80</td>
<td>81</td>
<td>82</td>
<td>83</td>
<td>84</td>
<td>85</td>
<td>86</td>
<td>Total</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>000</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>200</td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>20</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>300</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>400</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>42</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>47</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>7</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>72</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>500</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
<td>10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>11</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>600</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>23</td>
<td></td>
<td>17</td>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>20</td>
<td>48</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>38</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>700</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>800</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>12</td>
<td></td>
<td>7</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>38</td>
<td></td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>900</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>15</td>
<td></td>
<td>6</td>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
<td>14</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>11</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TOTAL</td>
<td>94</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>49</td>
<td>74</td>
<td>52</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>65</td>
<td>52</td>
<td>74</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>97</td>
<td>97</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**TABLE 5.9: PUBLISHED EGYPTIAN BOOKS, THE ENGLISH PART FROM 1980-1986**
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Information</th>
<th>Mentioned</th>
<th>Missing</th>
<th>Mentioned between brackets</th>
<th>Total</th>
<th>Percentage missing</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Edition</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>310</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>380</td>
<td>81.57%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Place of Publication</td>
<td>379</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td>380</td>
<td>0.26%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Publisher</td>
<td>379</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td>380</td>
<td>0.26%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Date</td>
<td>380</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>380</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Price</td>
<td>193</td>
<td>187</td>
<td></td>
<td>380</td>
<td>49.21%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISBN</td>
<td>295</td>
<td>85</td>
<td></td>
<td>380</td>
<td>22.36%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**TABLE 5.10: BIBLIOGRAPHIC INFORMATION IN THE MAIN SECTION (ARABIC)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Edition</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>177</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>178</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>99.43</td>
<td>92.85</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Place of Public.</td>
<td>177</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>178</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>0.56</td>
<td>-</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Publisher</td>
<td>176</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>178</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>1.12</td>
<td>-</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Date</td>
<td>178</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>178</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Price</td>
<td>47</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>131</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>178</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>73.59</td>
<td>46.42</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISBN</td>
<td>69</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>109</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>178</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>61.23</td>
<td>17.85</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**TABLE 5.11: BIBLIOGRAPHICAL INFORMATION IN THE CHILDREN'S BOOK SECTION AND SCHOOL BOOK SECTION (ARABIC)**

147
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Information Mentioned</th>
<th>Missing</th>
<th>Mentioned between brackets</th>
<th>Total</th>
<th>Percentage missing</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>School Main School Main School Main School Main School Main School Main</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Edition | 11 | 41 | 31 | - | - | 41 | 42 | 100 | 73.8 |
| Place of Pub. | 41 | 42 | - | - | - | - | 41 | 42 | - | - |
| Publisher | 41 | 42 | - | - | - | - | 41 | 42 | - | - |
| Date | 13 | 6 | 28 | 36 | - | - | 41 | 42 | 68.29 | 85.71 |
| Price | 16 | 29 | 25 | 13 | - | - | 41 | 42 | 60.97 | 30.95 |

TABLE 5.12: BIBLIOGRAPHICAL INFORMATION IN THE MAIN SECTION AND SCHOOL BOOK SECTION (NON-ARABIC)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Years</th>
<th>Sections</th>
<th>1978</th>
<th>1977</th>
<th>1976</th>
<th>1975</th>
<th>1964*</th>
<th>74</th>
<th>Total</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Main Section</td>
<td>213</td>
<td>152</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>380</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>School Section</td>
<td>132</td>
<td>46</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>178</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Children/Young People</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>28</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Main Section (Non-Arabic)</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>42</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>School Books (Non-Arabic)</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>41</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TOTAL</td>
<td>412</td>
<td>237</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>669</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Percentage</td>
<td>61.58</td>
<td>35.42</td>
<td>12.09</td>
<td>0.59</td>
<td>0.15</td>
<td>0.15</td>
<td>100</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Card No.48

TABLE 5.13: TIME DISTRIBUTION OF PUBLICATIONS ACCORDING TO EACH SECTION
# Place Distribution of Publications in Each Section

## Table 5.14: Place Distribution of Publications in Each Section

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>City</th>
<th>Sections Cairo Alexandria Bor-Said Al-Jizah Asiot Al-Mansora Faium Total</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Main</td>
<td>335 1 1 1 1 1 1 379</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>School</td>
<td>177 1 1 1 1 1 1 177</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Children</td>
<td>28 28 1 1 1 1 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Main (Eng)</td>
<td>41 1 1 1 1 1 1 42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>School</td>
<td>41 41 1 1 1 1 1 41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Books</td>
<td>41 41 1 1 1 1 1 41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>622 40 1 1 1 1 1 667</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Table 5.15: Bibliographic Information in Main Section (Arabic)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sections</th>
<th>Mentioned</th>
<th>Missing</th>
<th>Between brackets</th>
<th>Total</th>
<th>Percentage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Edition</td>
<td>79</td>
<td>250</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>329</td>
<td>75.98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Place of Pub.</td>
<td>248</td>
<td>81</td>
<td>101</td>
<td>329</td>
<td>24.62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Publisher</td>
<td>255</td>
<td>74</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>329</td>
<td>22.49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Date</td>
<td>322</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>85</td>
<td>329</td>
<td>2.12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Copy</td>
<td>98</td>
<td>231</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>329</td>
<td>70.21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISBN</td>
<td>121</td>
<td>208</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>329</td>
<td>63.22</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

TABLE 5.15: BIBLIOGRAPHIC INFORMATION IN MAIN SECTION (ARABIC)

149
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Information</th>
<th>Mentioned</th>
<th>Missing</th>
<th>Mentioned between brackets</th>
<th>Total</th>
<th>Percentage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>School Child</td>
<td>140</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>146</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Place of Pub.</td>
<td>141</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Publisher</td>
<td>142</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Date</td>
<td>146</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Price</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>115</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**TABLE 5.16: BIBLIOGRAPHICAL INFORMATION IN THE SCHOOL AND CHILDREN'S BOOK SECTIONS**
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Information</th>
<th>Mentioned</th>
<th>Missing</th>
<th>Mentioned between Brackets</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Gov. Main</td>
<td>School</td>
<td>Gov. Main</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Edition</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Place of Pub.</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Publisher</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Date of Pub.</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Copy price</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISBN</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Total</th>
<th>Percentage of Missing Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Government Publications</td>
<td>Main</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

TABLE 5.17: BIBLIOGRAPHICAL INFORMATION IN THE GOVERNMENT PUBLICATIONS AND NON-ARABIC BOOKS SECTION
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sections</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Main Section</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>205</td>
<td>86</td>
<td>322</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>School Section</td>
<td></td>
<td>3</td>
<td>114</td>
<td>29</td>
<td></td>
<td>146</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Children</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>26</td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Main Section (Non-Arabic)</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>9</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>School Books</td>
<td></td>
<td>14</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Governmental</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>9</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Publications</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>TOTAL</strong></td>
<td>2</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>377</td>
<td>123</td>
<td>540*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Percentage</td>
<td>0.37</td>
<td>0.74</td>
<td>6.29</td>
<td>69.81</td>
<td>22.77</td>
<td>100%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

|                     |      |      |      |      |      |       |

**TABLE 5.18: THE YEARS OF DISTRIBUTION OF PUBLICATIONS IN EACH SECTION**

* In the school section there are 22 books in which two years are mentioned, 1983/1984 and two books with 1982 and 1983, and one book that has 1983, 1984 on the cover and 1982 inside. In the main section (Arabic), there are books in which the publishing date shows 1983 and the introduction date 1984. Also, 48 books with publishing dates: 1982/1983 and 4 with 1983/1984. There are books with just the introduction date.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Places</th>
<th>Cairo</th>
<th>Alexandria</th>
<th>Zqaziq</th>
<th>Bani-Swaif</th>
<th>Jeeza</th>
<th>Tantah</th>
<th>Asiot</th>
<th>Mansora</th>
<th>Monia</th>
<th>Qhubya</th>
<th>Riyadh*</th>
<th>Moscow*</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sections</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Main</td>
<td>219</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>School</td>
<td>141</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Children's</td>
<td>32</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Main (non-Arabic)</td>
<td>11</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>School books</td>
<td>15</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Governmental Publications</td>
<td>10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>TOTAL</strong></td>
<td>428</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**TABLE 5.19:** THE PLACE DISTRIBUTION OF PUBLICATIONS IN EACH SECTION
6.1 HISTORY OF BIBLIOGRAPHY IN TUNISIA

The National Library of Tunisia was created unofficially in 1885 as the public library of the Regency of Tunisia. It remained as such and functioned as a national library until 1956 (the year of Tunisia's independence from France) when it took officially the name of the National Library of Tunisia. In 1967, a Presidential decree gave the Library the right to gather manuscripts from different libraries in the country and list them in one volume to start a national collection. With this decision, the idea of a National National Bibliography came to the fore. In 1970, the first Tunisian National Bibliography (TNB) appeared, listing publications for 1969.

6.2 PUBLISHER

The Bibliography is issued by the Department of Publishing and Legal Deposition, the Tunisian Bibliographical Agency, The National Book House, Ministry of Cultural Affairs, Tunis.

6.3 NEED AND AIM

To list all intellectual writing of Tunisia as an instrument for bibliographic control.
6.4 SCOPE OF COVERAGE

The Bibliography covers all books published in Tunisia regardless of their language or author's nationality.

6.4.1 Period of Coverage

The Bibliography has covered books published from 1970 until now. It has taken different forms i.e. retrospective and current. The retrospective bibliography has appeared in three issues, the first of which was published in 1974 covering 1958 to 1968. The second appeared in 1975 to cover a period from 1969 to 1973. The third one was issued in 1976 covering 1974. All these issues covered non-official (non-government) publications only. In 1975 a special issue covering scientific publications was published.

The current bibliography appeared in 1970, covering non-official publications of 1969. Since 1977 a current national bibliography has been published in a cumulative form. Other quarterly issues and appendixes appeared as well. The following list outlines these issues:

- 1978 cumulative issue of 1977 comprising 4 quarterlies.
- 1979 appendix in French of 1977 in addition to annual cumulative issue for 1978 comprising 4 quarterlies.
1985 cumulative issue of 1984 comprising 2 biannuals.
1986 cumulative issue of 1985 comprising 2 biannuals and appendix.
1987 cumulative issue of 1986 in addition to two monthlies.

The above record shows that the Bibliography has been published regularly since its establishment, but it has taken different forms. Each annual compiles the different issues published during the year; some were bi-annuals, others quarterlies and others 10 issues a year.

6.4.2 Subject Coverage

It covers all disciplines actually appearing in the books.

The Tables 6.1, 6.2, 6.3 display the period and subject coverage:

1. In Table 6.1 we note the increase of production of the books of Figh Language, Sunnah and literature. There is least production of books of philosophy, applied science and fine arts. There are no books of pure sciences. There is emphasis on books of religion and literature as is the case in all the Arab countries. The specific characteristic of Tunisia is that being a former French colony it felt a need for these books and that is what makes them so abundant.

2. Coverage in all areas increases from one year to another.
   From the statistics of publications from 1976 to 1986 in Table 6.2, we make the following remarks:
3. University publications are most frequent in the list; second come the non-official publications. It is noticed that the number of university publications in French is higher than that of the Arabic ones. This is due to many subjects being taught in French and the fact that many Tunisian intellectuals received their education in French. Arabicisation is new in Tunisia. Non-official publications on the other hand are mostly in Arabic. The reason that university publications are most abundant is that only one copy is required for deposition which has encouraged people to deposit despite the fact that it is voluntary. It should be noted that this regulation applies to research students only and not commercial publishing houses. The legislators must have realised that if more than one copy is required the student may find it difficult to make the deposit.

The increase of Arabic non-government publications over the French ones is very natural with the political changes undergone by the country.

4. The least number of books published is that of children's books in foreign languages.

5. There is a gradual increase through the years from 321 in 1976 to 1646 in 1985. This is due either to a real increase in publications or to a willingness to abide by depository laws or both.
6. The works in Arabic and those in foreign languages have approximately the same relative increase during the ten years. In 1985 however, there was an increase in the Arabic works of 226 books, and in 1986 there was an increase in the French works of 70 books. In time the intellectual production in Arabic may increase to a great extent. School books are an example. The 1976 production in the Arabic part was no more than 8. In 1986 it reached 61. In the same two years, French was only 6 then increased to 32. A similar increase was in the children's books which went up from 27 to 112 in the Arabic part and in the French from 2 to 5. The increase in French publications in ten years from 1976 to 1986 was negligible. This may be due to the falling readership. However, there is also reason to doubt the figure because of the people's failure to deposit their imprints.

Table 6.3 shows that:

7. The foreign works outnumber those in Arabic in most disciplines except in the sections of Religion and Languages and Literature.

8. The production in the Foreign (French) mostly part shows a large increase in applied sciences and medicine, the arts having increased at a lesser rate than the others. This is due to the fact that publications in the former disciplines are produced in languages other than Arabic such as French and English. There are also a large number of Tunisian intellectuals who were educated in the French system and thus produced their works in French.
9. The sections academic theses and research come top of the list followed by the private institutions' publications. The smallest number is that of school books.

10. The increase in foreign works is reflected in theses and research. The other sections show that Arabic works are greater in number. There are more research publications in the French part than the Arabic one, which is incompatible with point 6, due to the increase in the academic works and not only theses. This is normal in a country like Tunisia which still keeps close relations with France in many respects.

11. Most of the school books are on social science and the children's books are language and literature.

12. Academic theses and research publications are most numerous followed by the publications of private institutions. As is mentioned above this is attributed to the fact that only one copy is required for deposition, which is an encouragement to depositors.

13. What is unusual here is that the figure for government publications is only 88 books in a year. This is not reasonable. It must be due to the lack of cooperation on the part of the government institutions with regard to deposition. What also draws our attention is that in the 1987 table the government publications in French are more than double those in Arabic.
6.4.3 Types of Coverage


The Bibliography covers all works published within Tunisia, works by Tunisian authors published abroad and those relating to Tunisia. The current bibliography covers all books published in Tunisia only. It is also worth mentioning that it included children's and school books in its very first issue and has included Official Publications since 1977. In 1980 it included a list of new periodicals and in 1985 it included Academic Theses.

6.5 ORGANISATION

The Bibliography consists of two main parts. One lists the Arabic publications and reads from right to left. The other lists foreign publications (mainly in French) and reads from left to right.

The Arabic part comprises the following sections after the introduction and explanation of the main section of the Classification Decimal Universelle (CDU) and abbreviations.

1. The Official Publications were moved to an independent section in 1977, which became exclusive to publications by Government Agencies.
2. Non-Official Publications include compilations by commercial publishing houses, which are deposited in the NBH in accordance with the Depository Law. These are arranged according to subject.

3. School books are included within the Educational Section without further classification. Children's books, on the other hand, are mentioned at the end of each subject section.

4. Academic works: a copy of each thesis approved by a university, institute or research centre in Tunisia is voluntarily deposited.

5. In the beginning the indexes of the Bibliography listed titles and authors and Tunisian publications. In 1976 the organisations index was added. In 1979 that of the publishing and printing houses was included and in 1983 the subject index was included.

The Bibliography in its recent issues included the following indexes:
- Index of authors and organisations with names of authors, translators, editors or artists mentioned in each section. These are alphabetically ordered according to the last name of the author etc. The number of the book is put beside the name to indicate the location of the book in the Bibliography.

- Index of titles ordered alphabetically according to title of book.

- Index of subjects ordered alphabetically according to subject.
- Index of publishing houses: ordered alphabetically according to the name of the house. There is a number indicating the place of the book in the section and the name of the publisher.

- Index of printing houses: ordered alphabetically according to the name of the house with a number which indicates the books printed by the house.

The final part lists the periodicals issued the same year as the Bibliography publication.

6. There is a serial numbering which starts from the main section and ends at the end of the academic works.

The Foreign part. This part is the same as the Arabic one in terms of the general distribution i.e. Official Publications, non-Official Publications, Academic Works and the New Periodicals; then the indexes: the authors, the organisations, the titles, the subjects, the publishing houses and the printing houses.

7. Subjects are ordered according to the CDU except the retrospective volume for 1956-1968 the subjects of which are ordered according to DDC.

8. The bibliographical description was done in accordance with the method of the French Association for Classification (AFNOR) until 1975. In 1976 it was replaced by the ISBD, the method in use up to the present.
6.6 BIBLIOGRAPHICAL DESCRIPTION

The bibliographical description uses the ISBD as from 1976. Each card lists the author, co-authors if any, translators, editors if any, title of book, place of publication, name of publisher, date of publication, number of pages, length, name of series, number of book in the series, price of book, type of binding and the date of deposition in the NBH and two letters indicating whether deposition is compulsory or optional.

On the right top side of each card there is a serial number and at the bottom left there is a classification number. There are also some books which bear the ISBN (see study).

6.7 LISTS OF THE NATIONAL BOOK HOUSE [1]

Besides the National Bibliography the House issues other publications:

6.7.1 Periodicals

During 1975 the NBH issued two bibliographies. The first relates to the same year and deals with Arabic periodicals. The second deals with Arabic and French Scientific periodicals. Between 1977 and 1979 there were three issues of the bibliography, listing titles of Arabic periodicals published in Tunisia and deposited through the Legal Deposition Law. This bibliography covers the period between 1975 and 1979. The 4th issue, which covers 1980-1982, was published in 1985.
6.7.2 Catalogue

A. Catalogue of acquisitions: the first issue of this bulletin was published in 1966. It contains the items acquired by the NBH which were purchased, legally deposited, exchanged, or presented to the House. Until 1981 the documents were classified according to CDU but since that year the titles have been sorted out into four sections:
- Tunisia
- Arabic and Islamic world
- Third World, Africa and the Mediterranean
- Miscellaneous
Each section has subsections the classification of which is based on the CDU.

The Bulletin was published in monthlies, two-monthlies, quarterlies, and bi-annuals. There is also the Catalogue of Continuous Arabic Periodicals, and Foreign Periodicals, and library catalogues such as the Holdings of Belkhouja Library, Holdings of Al-Tamini Library and Holdings of Al-Sadiqyya Library. These appeared in special issues in 1980.

B. Catalogue of manuscripts: In 1975 the manuscript department published an catalogue of their holdings which appeared in consecutive volumes each including 1000 manuscripts. Each volume has an index of titles, authors, subjects, manuscript-writers, and date index in the Hegira Calendar. So far, 6 volumes have been published and the seventh is in press.
6.7.3 African Studies

The list of African works in the NBH 1976, was published in French. The first section includes French West Africa and French Equatorial Africa, the second section includes Senegal, the third section is on black Africa and the fourth section is entitled African countries which have gained independence from France.

6.7.4 The International Exchange Bulletin of the National Book House

This Bulletin is a quarterly and includes documents acquired by the House through exchange with foreign centres. These documents are alphabetically ordered according to the country or establishment of publication.

6.7.5 Guide to Documentation and Library Units

The first issue, published by the Periodical Administration, appeared in 1978 and includes all the documentation centres in the country in 1977. The second issue has not appeared yet.

6.7.6 Catalogue of Periodicals

During 1975, 1976 the first catalogue was published in two volumes. It included Foreign and Tunisian Publications which related to agriculture and Earth studies (agronomy). In 1985 two more catalogues were published. The first lists the periodicals registered in the International Centre for Periodical Publications. The second lists Foreign and Tunisian periodicals published in Arabic, copies of which are held in the NBH.
6.7.7 Arab Bulletin of Publications

After ALECSO moved to Tunisia in 1979, the NBH contributed in issuing the Arab Bulletin of Publications. From 1979 until 1985, this cooperation has produced 5 issues.

There are a number of specialised bibliographies of different subjects. Some are concerned with translations of old texts, some Tunisian and foreign cultural and literary heritage, others with books.

There are also 31 specialised bibliographies most of which deal with biography. These appear on special cultural occasions in which the House takes part.

6.8 DEPOSITORY LAW IN TUNISIA

The depository laws in Tunisia are similar to those in Egypt and Saudi Arabia in that they went through major different stages.

The first legal text of the Depository law was passed on 16 October 1884 [2] in the official journal 53. This was derived from the French Law. This is clear in the first part of the law "... For this reason we decided to make the French Law passed on 29 July 1881 an order which shall be in force in Tunisia ..."

Table 6.4 shows the stages of depository law with explanation of the depositor, the benefactor of deposition, the number of copies to be deposited and the pecuniary penalty for offenders. We can read in the table the following:
1. The 1884 law was issued when Tunisia was still under the French occupation.

2. The Public Library affiliated to the Ministry of Education and which acted as a National Library enjoyed the right of one copy according to the 1913 [3] depository law. This means that deposition has been in force since 1913.

3. The 1936 [4] law did not add anything significant to the previous law.

4. In the 1956 [5] law, it is noticed that the penalty was increased from 16-300 Francs, stated in the 1884 law, to 400-7200 Francs. This may have aimed to highlight the importance of deposition and the role it played in promoting a people's heritage through future generations. The same law limited the time of deposition to 24 hours before publication. This limitation was not mentioned in the past or in the laws that followed.

5. There was a large and comprehensive change in the 1975 [6] law which was the first law passed after Tunisia gained its independence. At this time when the country was experiencing development in the social, political and economic fields, the government had to set norms to regulate freedom of the press and publishing.
The researcher feels that the government thought the period between 1956 to 1975 was sufficient to set the intellectuals free, a period when the Tunisian people were still savouring the first taste of freedom after a long time under occupation.

The new law included many interesting points including:

- Deposition should be made immediately after printing.
- The penalty was reduced for the first offence but increased in case of re-offences.
- The number of copies increased from 3 in the 1956 law to 8 and the benefactors to 4 (see Table 6.4).

There is no mention of books published by Tunisian authors outside Tunisia.

6. In the 1988 [7] depository law, there is an increase in the number of deposited copies to 11 and copies had to be distributed to 6 government bodies. The number of deposited copies to the National Library remained unchanged (4 copies). The penalty was kept the same as for the 1975 law. This in fact was a reduction in penalties which are supposed to increase with inflation, and it shows that the state adopted a more flexible approach to make deposition popular and easier. However, in the case of re-offences the penalty can be heavier. Deposition is verified through a check on the books on the market so that undeposited books can be detected. This law, as the 1975 one, failed to specify those responsible for deposition. It mentions "the printer, or the publisher, or the author".
- The number of copies, 11, to be deposited, is similar to that of Egypt. It is a large number if we take into account that the average number of books printed in the Arab World, apart from Egypt, is 3000 copies. When the authorities require 11 copies of one book, it puts a burden on the publisher who will try to dodge deposition. He may deposit copies with the Ministry of Information, the Ministry of Cultural Affairs and the Council of Representatives who have direct power to prosecute. When it comes to the National Library he may find it hard to give away 4 copies, knowing that it will take some time before the book is discovered on the market and checked as to whether it has been deposited or not (Chapter 11). For this reason the National Library complains that only 80% of printed books are deposited.

- If there were communication and cooperation between the Ministry of Interior and the National Library as far as deposition is concerned, then chapter 11 would not be needed.

- The law does not specify the period of deposition: it states as soon as printing or manufacture is completed. But what is the period within which deposition should be made and after which failure to do so is punishable?

- The law does not cater for the Tunisian books printed abroad.
6.9 STUDY

In order to know the extent of the application of ISBN and ISBD, a study of the TNB is as important as of the ENB.

6.9.1 Choosing a Sample

The researcher has selected the latest sample i.e. the Annual Cumulative Volume of 1986 which was published in 1987.

6.9.2 Justification of Choice

After 15 years of TNB publications, the bibliography should have sufficient experience to avoid the mistakes of the early publications and be able to produce a model bibliography.

6.9.3 Why Annual and Not Quarterly?

The Tunisian intellectual writing production is not large in volume in comparison with the Egyptian one. To make our study comprehensive and representative, an annual cumulative volume has been chosen. The quarterly of July, August and September of 1988 lists:

- Official Publications: 7 Arabic titles
  16 French titles
- Private Establishments: 78 Arabic titles
  23 French titles

This total is not enough for a study which wants to examine all aspects of the bibliography.
On the other hand, the sample selected for this research lists:

Official Publications: 58 Arabic titles
44 French titles

Private Establishments: 476 Arabic titles
95 French titles

Academic works: 113 Arabic titles
580 French titles

6.9.4 Reasons for Using ISBD and ISBN in the Study

There are reasons shared with the ENB and in addition the following reasons specific to TNB:
- Its consistent and regular publication
- It is published by the National Library of the country
- The representative model of the TNB

It is necessary to know the extent to which it applies certain laws pertaining to the publication of national bibliographies.

6.9.5 Methodology
- Every card was considered individually to see how complete its data was.
- To what extent it applies the ISBD
- To what extent it applies punctuation.

The Study:
1. Table 6.5 displays the publications of the main section, the Children's section and the School Books in the non-Official Publications.

2. Table 6.6 Non-official publications in the foreign part.

3. Table 6.7 Official publications in the foreign and Arabic parts.

4. Table 6.8 Time distribution of publications according to each section.

5. Table 6.9 Place distribution of publications according to each section.

6. 10 OBSERVATIONS

Table 6.5

1. 65.18% of the edition numbers have not been mentioned in the main section, 67.19% in the Children's section, and 96.82% in the School book section. These are high rates taking into account the totals of each section.

2. The highest percentages registered in the three sections are the place of publication and year of publication.

3. The percentage of prices and names of publishers which are not mentioned is not very great. The names of publishers have been covered by mentioning the name and place of the printing house on almost every card.

4. Square brackets are used very rarely.
Table 6.6

5. The percentage of edition numbers missing from the foreign part section "non-Official Publications" is very high indeed in that it reaches 94.73%. This is followed by the prices of the publication which are 52.63% not mentioned. This percentage is cause for concern, as this a cumulative volume for 1986.

Table 6.7

6. What is mentioned in 5 is true of this table as far as the numbers of editions and prices are concerned. The percentage not mentioned in the Arabic and foreign parts of the official publications is very high. It reached 98.27%, and 97.72% for the edition numbers and 98.27% and 81.81% for the book prices in the Arabic and foreign parts respectively.

Table 6.8

7. The cumulative volume for 1986 lists mostly books printed in 1986 but 2 books which were printed in 1985.

Table 6.9

8. This table shows that the highest number of books are printed in Tunis (1068), followed by Sousa (112) then Sfaqs (105).

From Table 6.5 we conclude that the publisher is responsible for not specifying the edition and the bibliography administration share this responsibility for letting it pass without comment. The publisher is first blamed because the proportion of the books without edition is quite high. The administration should have been more strict in pointing out this error.
As we know in the scientific books for example the edition is very significant. The more recent the edition is, the more valuable is the book scientifically, and the older the edition is the more valuable is the book historically.

The price is also important, for when the libraries and bookshops want to acquire a book, they can consult the bibliography and find the price.

General Observations

9. There are books which appear in both French and Arabic such as numbers 28, 34, 35, 38, 61 and 63. Although these books are in French and Arabic, they were not mentioned in the French part. The French title was mentioned parallel to the Arabic one (Sample No 2).

10. The ISBN appears in one book only "no 134" in the foreign part. In other books there are at the end of the book two letters indicating whether deposition was legal, i.e. compulsory or optional. There are two numbers one of which indicates the serial number in the NBH and the other the year of deposition (Sample No 3).

11. Although there are the name of the publisher and place of publication, most of the cards also show the name and place of the printing house (Sample No 1).
12. There are different types of books in the bibliography such as those edited, compiled, presented, conference papers etc. (Sample No 4).

13. There are translated books in the Arabic part (10) and the Children's section (26) (Sample No 5).

14. The Bibliography includes books printed in Tunisia for publishers in Kuwait or Algeria (Sample No 6).

15. Serial numbers 128, 364 and 88 are missing (Sample No 7).

16. The issue lists a French/Arabic dictionary (Sample No 8).

17. The letters could be condensed when printing so that each page can take more cards and thus the size of the Bibliography would be reduced as is the case of the BNB.

18. The ISBD is perfectly applied on all the cards.

19. No reason is known why the ISBN of books are not mentioned. In 1987 the house issued a booklet in Arabic and French to explain the ISBN in a detailed fashion.

20. Book number 57 is the only one the place of publication and the publisher of which are not mentioned in the non-Official Publications section, the foreign part (Sample No 9).
21. In non-official publications, cooperation between the publisher and the deposition agencies is not as it should be. It is, however, no better in the official publications part where it is unreasonable that the deposited books in the Arabic and the foreign part did not total more than 102 books for one whole year. Thus we can infer that the government bodies do not respect deposition and this is an even more worrying phenomenon than the case with non-official publishers.

SUMMARY

TNB has been regarded as a model for the Arab Countries. It was issued for the first time in 1970 and since then has continued to appear until the present time.

However, after twenty years of publication, it has yet to find a consistent frequency of appearance. It has shifted from a month to a quarterly, an annual or a two-monthly.

After successive laws in Tunisia, it was decided that four copies must be deposited in the National Library and another 7 copies in different institutions. This is not very different from the Egyptian system.

After consideration, it is concluded that TNB has not benefited from its neighbours in Arab and European cultures as it should have done. It failed to apply certain necessary rules in bibliography compilation, such as ISBN. This may be attributed to the limited financial resources and lack of specialised staff.
The staff in the House are 15 in number but most of them are not professionally trained librarians. Only four of them are specialised and experienced. Although a computer is available in the House, it has not yet been used for lack of expertise. The budget does not allow the House to finance the training of its staff.
REFERENCES

1. NATIONAL Book House. List of National Book House publications. -
   Department of Publishing and Legal Deposition, 1986. - p.5-35.

2. THE TUNISIAN Government "Law of 14 October 1884". - The Tunisian
   Official Magazine, Al-Raid, 1884.

3. THE TUNISIAN Government "Decree of 13 September 1913". -The

4. The Tunisian Government "Decree of 6 August 1936". - The Tunisian
   Official Magazine Al-Raid 64, 11 August, 1936.

5. THE TUNISIAN Government "Decree of 9 February 1956". - The

6. THE TUNISIAN Republic "Law of 28 April 1975. - The Republic of

7. MINISTRY of Information. The Press Magazine. - Tunis, 1988. -
   p.9-12.
TABLES
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subjects</th>
<th>Year</th>
<th>70</th>
<th>71</th>
<th>72</th>
<th>73</th>
<th>74</th>
<th>75</th>
<th>Total</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen. Know.</td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Philosophy</td>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Religion</td>
<td></td>
<td>6</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Social Sciences</td>
<td></td>
<td>8</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Law &amp; Admin.</td>
<td></td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Beaux Arts</td>
<td></td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sunna, Lge</td>
<td></td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Studies</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Literature</td>
<td></td>
<td>29</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>42</td>
<td>38</td>
<td>190</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Geography,</td>
<td></td>
<td>12</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>History &amp; Translations</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proceedings</td>
<td></td>
<td>-</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Theses</td>
<td></td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>School Books</td>
<td></td>
<td>8</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Children's Books</td>
<td></td>
<td>5</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td></td>
<td>71</td>
<td>56</td>
<td>83</td>
<td>65</td>
<td>88</td>
<td>119</td>
<td>482</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**TABLE 6.1: COPIES OF BOOKS DEPOSITED IN THE NATIONAL BOOK HOUSE AND LISTED IN THE NATIONAL BIBLIOGRAPHY FROM 1970 TO 1975**
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>A F</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Official publications</td>
<td>42</td>
<td>74</td>
<td>78</td>
<td>132</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>109</td>
<td>57</td>
<td>127</td>
<td>96</td>
<td>83</td>
<td>79</td>
<td>88</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-official publications</td>
<td>93</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>165</td>
<td>52</td>
<td>116</td>
<td>33</td>
<td>134</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>78</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>196</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>138</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Children's books</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>84</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>86</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>School books</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>46</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>44</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Academic publications</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>136</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>73</td>
<td>51</td>
<td>119</td>
<td>38</td>
<td>106</td>
<td>67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TOTAL</td>
<td>180</td>
<td>141</td>
<td>2625</td>
<td>235</td>
<td>250</td>
<td>361</td>
<td>274</td>
<td>267</td>
<td>260</td>
<td>443</td>
<td>240</td>
<td>332</td>
<td>357</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SECTIONS</td>
<td>PUBLICATIONS OF THE STATE &amp; ITS AGENCIES</td>
<td>PRIVATE ESTABLISHED PUBLICATIONS</td>
<td>CHILDREN'S BOOKS</td>
<td>SCHOOL BOOKS</td>
<td>ACADEMIC WORKS</td>
<td>TOTAL</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>--------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>General</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>32</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Knowledge</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>12</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Philosophy</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>7</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psychology</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Logic</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>13</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Religion</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>41</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Social Sciences</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>44</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>110</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>F</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>56</td>
<td>129</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Natural Sciences</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>F</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>63</td>
<td>76</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Applied Sciences</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>16</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medicine</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>413</td>
<td>426</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arts</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>F</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Languages and Literature</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>61</td>
<td>106</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>198</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>F</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>39</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>74</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>History, Geography and Translation</td>
<td></td>
<td>-</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>74</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>F</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>48</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TOTAL</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>144</td>
<td>106</td>
<td>44</td>
<td>115</td>
<td>437</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>F</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>81</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>578</td>
<td>749</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>88</td>
<td>225</td>
<td>119</td>
<td>61</td>
<td>693</td>
<td>1186</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

TABLE 6.3: ACADEMIC PUBLICATIONS, SCHOOL AND CHILDREN'S BOOKS AND THESE DEPOSITED IN THE HOUSE IN 1987
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Depository Law</th>
<th>Depositor</th>
<th>No. of Copies</th>
<th>Beneficiaries</th>
<th>Penalty</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 1884</td>
<td>Printer</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Library chiefs</td>
<td>25-500 Riyals 16-300 Francs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 1913</td>
<td>Printer</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Library chiefs, Public Library (National Book House)</td>
<td>&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 1936</td>
<td>Printer</td>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 1956</td>
<td>Printer</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Public Library (NBH)</td>
<td>400-7200 Francs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 1975</td>
<td>Printer, or publisher or distributor</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>National Book House, State Secretariat for Information, Ministry of the Interior, General Prosecution, Department of the Republic</td>
<td>20-220 Dinars In case of further offence 40-400 Dinars</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 1988</td>
<td>Printer, or publisher or distributor</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Ministry of Information, Ministry of Cultural Affairs, Library of the Representative Council (Tunisian Parliament), Wilayat, Prosecution Department of the Republic, National Book House</td>
<td>20-220 Dinars In case of further offence 40-400 Dinars</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

TABLE 6.4: STAGES OF THE DEPOSITORY LAW IN TUNISIA
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INFORMATION</th>
<th>MENIONED</th>
<th>MISSING</th>
<th>MENTIONED BETWEEN [ ]</th>
<th>TOTAL</th>
<th>PERCENTAGE MISSING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Main School Child</td>
<td>Main School Child</td>
<td>Main School Child</td>
<td>Main School Child</td>
<td>Main School Child</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Edition</td>
<td>55</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>83</td>
<td>103</td>
<td>61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Place of publication</td>
<td>158</td>
<td>63</td>
<td>252</td>
<td>158</td>
<td>63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Publisher</td>
<td>143</td>
<td>55</td>
<td>222</td>
<td>158</td>
<td>63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Date</td>
<td>158</td>
<td>63</td>
<td>252</td>
<td>158</td>
<td>63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Price</td>
<td>127</td>
<td>54</td>
<td>229</td>
<td>158</td>
<td>63</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*TABLE 6.5: CONTENTS OF THE ARABIC PART MAIN - CHILDREN - SCHOOL*
### Table 6.6: Data Available in Non-Official Publications in the Foreign Part

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DATA</th>
<th>AVAILABLE</th>
<th>NOT AVAILABLE</th>
<th>TOTAL</th>
<th>%</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Edition</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>95</td>
<td>94.73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Place of publication</td>
<td>94</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>95</td>
<td>1.05</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Publisher</td>
<td>87</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>95</td>
<td>8.42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Date</td>
<td>95</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>95</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Price</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>95</td>
<td>52.63</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 6.7: Data Available in Official Publications in the Foreign and Arabic Parts

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DATA</th>
<th>AVAILABLE</th>
<th>NOT AVAILABLE</th>
<th>TOTAL</th>
<th>%</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Edition</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>57</td>
<td>58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Place of publication</td>
<td>57</td>
<td>43</td>
<td>43</td>
<td>58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Publisher</td>
<td>58</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Year</td>
<td>58</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>58</td>
<td>58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Price</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>88</td>
<td>57</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DATA</th>
<th>AVAILABLE</th>
<th>NOT AVAILABLE</th>
<th>TOTAL</th>
<th>%</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Edition</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>57</td>
<td>58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Place of publication</td>
<td>57</td>
<td>43</td>
<td>43</td>
<td>58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Publisher</td>
<td>58</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Year</td>
<td>58</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>58</td>
<td>58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Price</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>88</td>
<td>57</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 6.8: Data Available in Official Publications in the Foreign and Arabic Parts
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SECTION/YEAR</th>
<th>1985</th>
<th>1986</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Official publications</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-official publications</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>474</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Academic theses</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Official publications (foreign)</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-official publications (foreign)</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Academic theses (foreign)</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>579</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

TABLE 6.8: TIME DISTRIBUTION OF PUBLICATIONS ACCORDING TO EACH SECTION
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SECTION/PLACE</th>
<th>TUNIS</th>
<th>AL-KAP</th>
<th>SOUSSAH</th>
<th>AL-MAHDYAH</th>
<th>BENZET</th>
<th>MALYANAH</th>
<th>JANDABAH</th>
<th>MENSTEER</th>
<th>BARIDNEEN</th>
<th>GABIS</th>
<th>SAFAGIS</th>
<th>BAJAH</th>
<th>NABIL</th>
<th>TEFFARA</th>
<th>TOTAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Official publications</td>
<td>46</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-official publications</td>
<td>399</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>61</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td>5</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>47</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Academic theses</td>
<td>108</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Official publications (foreign)</td>
<td>44</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-official publications (foreign)</td>
<td>85</td>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>4</td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Academic theses (foreign)</td>
<td>386</td>
<td>45</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>45</td>
<td></td>
<td>92</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>58</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TOTAL</td>
<td>1068</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>112</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>47</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>105</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>1363</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

TABLE 6.9: PLACE DISTRIBUTION OF PUBLICATIONS ACCORDING TO EACH SECTION
134 BEN ZINA BEN ABDALLAH (Zeineb).
ISBN 2-7283-0119-0
Brock. DLM 24/87
930.271. - InscriptionsLatines Musee du Bardo, Catalogue.
Broché : pr. 1.800 D DLM 197/86 ; 53.- Physique, enseignement, manuel.

89 REFIFA ( A. )
Broché : pr. 0.700 D DLM 205/86
621.- Technologie mécanique, enseignement, manuel.

Sample No 7

55 YAHIA - BACHA ( Mouloud ).
Broché: pr. 9.800 D DLM 122/86
34.- Droit, terminologie.- 32.- Politique, terminologie.

Sample No 8
Troisième congrès = third congress/ Interafricaine socialiste.- [s.1]: [s.n.], 1986 (Tunis : impr. Société d'Arts Graphiques d'Édition de Presse).- 124 p.: ill. ; 24 cm.
Broché. DLM 102/86

Sample No 9
CHAPTER 7
NATIONAL BIBLIOGRAPHY IN THE KSA

INTRODUCTION

The development of writing, printing and publishing in the KSA has, through the last decades, produced a large body of intellectual work, worthy of consideration and encouragement, and there should be bibliographical control of this production to preserve it and introduce it to users who would enhance and develop it.

There have been a number of individual attempts to achieve this end, but they fall short in accuracy and good coverage. Among the works which have tried to compile a list of Saudi Arabian publications are:


6. Yahya Sa'ati And Abdulla Al-Kahtani 1391H (1971 AD). Mu'Allafat Wa Maraj'a An Al-Mamlakakh Al-Arabiah Al-Saudiah, (References and Publications on the KSA) [6].


This study is not concerned with those works which have not appeared in the form of a bibliographic book. There are articles which title the bibliographic issue but they are not extensive enough to be included in this thesis.

This Chapter analyses the above bibliographical works in terms of the following points:
It is clear that all the above mentioned works were prepared or supervised by people who realised the importance of providing facilities to cover Saudi intellectual output. Moreover, all of these people are contemporary writers who live in the cultural and intellectual environment and are in contact with the intellectual sources. There are people like Attar [10], Tahir [11], Al-Rifa'ai [12] and Al-Dubib [13] who are prominent figures in education, culture and literature, whereas Anani [14], Sa'ati [15] and Kahtani [16] are specialists in bibliography and libraries. Dr Sa'ati is a distinguished scholar who has concerned himself with bibliographical work in the KSA for many years. He has many publications in this field.

It is only natural that the works of Al-Attar, Al-Tahir, Al-Rifa'ai and Dubib reflect cultural or literary characteristics. This is particularly evident in the prolonged prefaces to their books. Al-Attar for example, writes a long introduction about the cultural and educational renaissance in the KSA, and Al-Rifa'ai's introduction deals with the influence King Abdul Aziz had on education and his
contribution to the encouragement of publishing. Dubib talks about early printing in the KSA, and Al-Tahir in three literary introductions talks about printing and publishing in the KSA. The other works such as those of Al-Anani, Sa'ati and Kahtani have a bibliographical nature.

We can thus divide the works into two classes. The first is library based and includes the works of Al-Anani, Al-Sa'ati, and Al-Kahtani. The second is academic, educational and literary and includes the works of Al-Attar, Al-Rifa'ai, Al-Dubib, and Al-Tahir. This division is based on the following criteria:

1. The academic background, namely the study of the author at university and his degrees.

2. The publications, namely whether they are specialised or non-specialised.

3. Methodology of research, namely whether they have bibliographically oriented research.

It should, however, be mentioned that these criteria have not always been consistent. For example, we have Al-Sa'ati and Al-Khatani who are academics, but in their publications they tend to be more librarian than academic. In the second class, we find Al-Attar the educationalist, Al-Rifa'ai a man of letters, and Al-Dubib and Al-Tahir academics with a tendency to literature, as influenced by their background.
7.2 NEED AND AIM

The major motivation for producing each of these works can hardly be said to be the coverage of the national intellectual output in such a way that the result would be a national bibliography. Al-Attar [17] mentions in his introduction that his Guide is a "concise" work to acquaint the reader with Saudi works. Moreover, it was "hastily" prepared to guide visitors to the 10th Arabic Book Exhibition held by the Arabic Club in Lebanon. The main motivation of Al-Tahir [18] was his desire to gain more knowledge about Saudi literature, how to study and teach it. By the same token, Al-Anani's Catalogue of Saudi Publications is an "initial" coverage produced on the occasion of the Bibliographical Conference of Arabic Books held in Riyadh [19]. Al-Sa'ati's [20] work 'Writing and Publishing Movement in the KSA' is an attempt to compile Saudi intellectual output in a limited time, to study the writing and publishing movement in the KSA. He points out in his introduction that his book is not a national bibliography, simply "a contribution which can be useful". Sa'ati's [21] work 'Arabic Literature in the KSA' confines itself to literary books. Moving to Al-Anani's work [22] 'KSA, A Bibliographical Study', we find that it is an attempt to "offer researchers and those concerned with Saudi affairs a useful reference". The work covers books and references published in Saudi in Arabic and translated versions of foreign works. The same line was followed in work by Sa'ati and Al-Kahtani [23], 'References and Publications on the KSA'.

Al-Rifa'ai's work [24] is a research based publication presented at the International Conference on King Abdul Aziz's life held by the
Imam Mohammad Ibn Saud Islamic University in 1986 AD (1406H). Finally, Al-Dubib's [25] work deals with an important stage in the history of printing in Saudi, i.e. the first stages of its introduction into the KSA. He gives a list of books published by those early printing and publishing houses during the period 1300H (1883 AD) to 1343H (1923 AD).

It becomes clear then that these works are mostly characterised by individual efforts in their production. This is clearly mentioned in the introduction of each work. There are those which have been produced to contribute to a book fair, to a conference, or those which fill a gap in the author's field such as Al-Tahir and Al-Sa'ati in writing and publishing. There are those who aimed to make their works of more general benefit and deal with the KSA as a whole, such as Al-Anani's, Bibliographic Study, and Al-Sa'ati and Al-Kahtani's References and Publications. Expressions from the introductions noted above indicate the partial and inaccurate nature of the coverage.

7.3 SCOPE OF COVERAGE

There is lack of accuracy in covering Saudi works. All the previous works are keen attempts at covering Saudi works and books printed or published inside the KSA as well as Saudi or non-Saudi writers' work on the KSA printed or published abroad. It is evident that the compilation of Saudi works alone is far from being comprehensive or accurate. Also, there are considerable differences and disparities among the bibliographical works. Thus it is not surprising that works written by non-Saudis about the KSA lack comprehensive coverage.
Moreover, most of the works mentioned above endeavour to keep a record of works printed or published inside Saudi by non-Saudi writers. Some of the works even list non-Saudi works which have nothing to do with Saudi Arabia as far as printing, publishing or writing are concerned. This comes as a result of digression or lack of clear scope as to the geographical coverage.

Table 7.1 shows the total production of books mentioned in all the works, with the periods they cover. It also shows publications printed inside and outside the KSA and the books without date/place of publication in the main part of each work.

7.3.1 Period of Coverage
There is disparity and overlapping of periods covered by different works. Disparity and overlapping in encompassment periods makes it difficult to see the books as a series covering works in successive periods. That is, the works can hardly be considered as a retrospective national bibliography with serial parts.

If we look at Table 7.1, we find that it generally covers publications from 1206H (1786 AD) until 1404H (1984 AD), a period of 198 years. We conclude that there are 1550 books (20%) without date of publication either because the book concerned does not bear the date of publication or the compiler has not consulted the book himself. It is noticed that most of the works do not mention the starting and last date of their coverage. This is why the researcher has made efforts to find out these dates by consulting the bibliographies themselves whenever possible.
The only works specifying clearly the periods, are Sa'ati's 'Writing...' [with the period from 1390H (1970) to 1399H (1979)], and Al-Dubib's work [with the period from 1300H (1883) to 1343 (1923)]. The other works do not specify the exact years covered.

Al-Attar's work does not clearly define the exact years covered though it was published in the year 1384H (1964 AD). The same applies to Al-Anani's catalogue. On checking the researcher has found that it starts with the year 1303H (1885 AD) and ends in 1394H (1974 AD). As for Sa'ati's 'Arabic ...' it is not very clear where it actually starts or ends, though it is possible to deduce that it covers the period from 1313H (1893 AD) until 1399 (1979 AD). Al-Anani's Bibliographic Study extends from the year 1285H (1865 AD) to 1397H (1977 AD). Sa'ati and Al-Kahtani's 'References ...' starts in the year 1294H (1874 AD) and extends to 1391H (1971 AD).

Al-Tahir's work covers literary works in general from the year 1206H (1786 AD) to 1404H (1984 AD). Al-Rifa'ai's work covers the period from 1342H (1922 AD) to 1379H (1959 AD), though there are 52 of the 98 books mentioned with no specific dates or publication places.

This study aims to disclose the shortcomings of some of the works.

Comparative Study of Sa'ati's Writing ... and Anani's Catalogue ... for 1390H (1970 AD), 1391H (1971 AD), 1392 (1972 AD), 1393 (1973 AD)
The reason why these two works have been chosen is that they are purely bibliographical. The common point between them is that they cover the same period of four years. Sa'ati covers the period 1390
(1970 AD) to mid-1399 (1979 AD), while Anani covers materials published up to 1393 (1973 AD). The years they both cover are 1390-93 (1970-73 AD).

Numerical Coverage

Table 7.2 shows the numerical coverage of the above mentioned works and the distribution of Anani and Sa'ati entries over the years covered. The tally of these works amounts to: Anani 133 titles and Sa'ati 202 titles.

Having covered the four years common to both books, we note that:

a) They correspond on some 82 books (cf Table 7.3).
b) They differ as to the publication dates of 18 books.
c) Sa'ati mentions 98 books which Anani does not cover.
d) Anani mentions 23 books which Sa'ati does not include (cf Table 7.4).

From the above figures one can see that overlapping and disparity among different works is considerable, and the encompassment of literary works is not comprehensive. This makes it difficult to define gaps left uncovered.

If we consider Al-Anani's Bibliographical Study and Al-Sa'ati and Al-Kahtani's 'References and Publications', we find that they cover the same period from 1874 to 1971, i.e. 62 years. Overall, Al-Sa'ati and Al-Kahtani cover from 1874 to 1971 and Al-Anani from 1865 to 1979. Both works deal with Saudi Arabia in general and are produced by librarians. Al-Sa'ati and Al-Kahtani list 488 books whereas Al-Anani lists 966 books. We notice the difference in the number of publications covered over the same period.
7.3.2 Number Coverage

There are differences in the number of titles in these works. Al-Attar's work includes 231 literary works, whereas Al-Anani's Catalogue covers 1640 books, Sa'ati's 'Writing ..' has 796 books, Sa'ati's 'Arabic...' has 531 books, Al-Anani's Bibliographical Study includes 1257 books, Sa'ati and Al-Kahtani's Reference has 488 books, Al-Tahir covers 3879 books, Al-Rifai has 98 books, and Al-Dubib has 210 books.

Some books have been mentioned more than once in works such as the Al-Anani Catalogue. There is a listing of government publications in the main section whereas they are supposed to be in their appropriate special sections.

For the ten years from 1300H (1880 AD) to 1310H (1890 AD) we find that Al-Anani and Al-Tahir mention in their works one book, while Al-Dubib has 42 books in this period. There has been a gradual increase in coverage in the ten year periods. It reached 765 books from 1381 (1962) to 1390 (1970) in Al-Anani "Bibliographic Study". In the same period Al-Sa'ati and Al-Kahtani's 'References...', mentioned 238 books and Al-Sa'ati's 'Arabic...', 417 books. Al-Anani's "Writing" lists 727 books, Al-Tahir lists 872. Al-Sa'ati was encouraged to carry out an analytical study of that fertile period of printing in Saudi Arabia when 796 books were published, from 1390H (1970) to 1399H (1979). If Al-Tahir has covered more books, that is because he has benefited from Al-Sa'ati and Al-Anani's works.
7.3.3 Subject Coverage

There is coverage of a variety of topics. The above mentioned works are all dedicated to covering works on a wide range of human knowledge, although prominence is given to works dealing with topics such as literature, religion, history and other social sciences. Pure and applied sciences, fine arts, and philosophy and psychology are negligible.

7.3.4 Types of Coverage

Books are the main type of publication. All the bibliographical works are basically dedicated to listing all the works published by individuals, organisations or commercial printing houses. Yet the coverage includes the most important government publications issued by organisations, ministries and other governmental departments. Some of the bibliographies (for example Anani's Catalogue) also cover a number of reports and studies printed, typed or photocopied. Some of the authors even list school textbooks. Some of them refer to books in press. Al-Tahir mentions a considerable number of manuscripts. Magazines (and the like) are excluded from this study, although Al-Tahir mentions some of them despite the fact that they are not within the limits of his study. Sa'ati's 'Arabic ...' also refers to some literary works published in periodicals or monthly or weekly magazines, but not studies or articles published in daily newspapers.

Attar's guide covers books which were financed by HM King Abdul Aziz Al-Saud and other notables and businessmen in the KSA, and Sa'ati's 'Arabic Literature in the KSA' only includes literary works and studies about them in books, journals or monthly or weekly magazines.
All these compilations cover works published in the Arabic language either by composition or translation. Al-Tahir's work, however, covers a limited number of published works in other languages such as Turkish or Jawa. Sa'ati's Bibliography adds a few works published in English.

7.3.5 Numerical Coverage of Books Produced at Home and Abroad

Al-Attar does not give the place of publication of the books he lists. In Table 7.1 we have referred to books published inside or outside the KSA. If we consider the total of both we find they are roughly equal. However, if we consider each work, we find that there is sometimes a difference in the number of books published outside or inside the KSA. That is because the works cover different periods. The reasons for the greater number of books printed abroad in some cases include the fact that the printing industry in the KSA was in its infancy, the neglect of the government, and the illiteracy of the population.

After King Abdulaziz took over (see Chapter 3) printing, publishing and education entered a new era of development. The printing and publishing charges were gradually reduced. Printing and publishing inside was no less, if not more important than outside the KSA. This is illustrated in the following tables.

Table 7.5 shows books that have been printed and published within the KSA are more than those published abroad, although the difference is not very significant in Anani's catalogue.

Table 7.6 shows that in Riyadh more books have been published than in any other city (265), almost half the total of all books published in
the KSA. Second is Makkah with 145 books and then Jeddah with 96 books. The cities with the fewest publications are Al-Ahsa and Al-Jawf.

Table 7.7 shows that most of the books by Saudi authors printed abroad come from three countries: Egypt 63.92%, Lebanon 21.91% and Syria 10.06%.

Table 7.8 shows that Riyadh has the highest rate of printing and publishing followed by Jeddah and then Taif.

Table 7.9 shows that Egypt is the country with the highest rate of printing, followed by the Lebanon.

In Al'Sa'ati's 'Arabic...', books printed outside the KSA outnumber considerably those printed within the country.

Although Al'Ansni in his Bibliographical Study indicates that his catalogue focuses on books about Saudi Arabia, which one might expect to be written by authors outside the country, we find in Tables 7.12 and 7.13 that books printed inside the KSA are more than those printed outside. In Al-Sa'ati and Al-Kahtani's Reference on the other hand, we find in Tables 7.14 and 7.15 that books printed inside the KSA are fewer than those printed outside.

In Al-Tahir and Al-Rifa'ai the number of books printed outside the KSA is more than those printed inside because they cover an earlier period. Al-Dubib covers books printed inside the KSA (two Holy Mosques only).
It seems from Tables 7.6, 7.7, 7.8, 7.9, 7.10, 7.11, 7.12, 7.13, 7.14 and 7.15 that most of the works published outside the KSA were published in Egypt, Lebanon and Syria. Most of the books published within the KSA were published in three cities, i.e. Riyadh, Jeddah and Makkah.

7.4 REFERENCES

There is failure to mention source references. Some of the above mentioned works do not clearly note the reference on which the information about the listed work is based, for example, works such as Al-Attar, Al-Anani's Catalogue and Bibliographical Study; Al-Sa'ati's 'Arabic ...', 'Writing...', and 'Reference ...' The rest of the works, Al-Dubib, Al-Rifa'ai and Al-Tahir, however, mention the different references, which include libraries, lists and books:

During the time he was working on his guide Attar was Assistant Director of Makkah Educational District, Al-Anani worked in the Library Department at the Ministry of Education, Sa'ati and Kahtani benefited from their positions at the KSU in tracing the books that usually come to the library by referring to the records.

7.5 THE BIBLIOGRAPHICAL DESCRIPTION

There is lack of well-defined bibliographical descriptions. Hence, the description can be detailed in some cases and very brief in others, without adhering to specific rules in the approach adopted. Al-Attar for example, does not seem in the least interested in
bibliographical descriptions. The information he mentions is limited to names of authors and titles of books in most cases. Another example is Al-Tahir's work which does not include bibliographical description. The compiler even states that his work is not a reference catalogue. The same comment applies to Al-Rifa'i's work and to Al-Dubib. The works of Al-Anani, and Sa'ati and Al-Kahtani focus on bibliographical description, an interest which is probably due to the fact that the authors are specialists in Bibliography and Libraries. Hence, information in their works is generally more comprehensive, stating the name of the author, title of the book, date of publication, number of pages, etc.

It can be noted that some of the authors do not keep to a specific set of rules in description, although this remark does not apply to the five previous works. Thus there are many examples of lack of accuracy in description, or in the introduction of some works, or the absence of information such as date of publication. The latter is applicable to 302 books mentioned in Al-Anani's Catalogue, 24 books in Sa'ati's 'Writing...', 74 books in Sa'ati's 'Arabic...', 256 books in Al-Anani's Bibliographical Study, 117 books in Sa'ati and Al-Kahtani's 'References...', and 52 books in Al-Rifa'i.

Classification of names in Al-Anani's Catalogue and Al-Tahir's Bibliographical Study is done according to first name, whereas it is according to surname or last morphene or family name in Sa'ati's 'Writing...', 'Arabic...', 'Reference...', and Al-Dubib's work. In the case of Al-Rifa'ai, it is done alphabetically according to the title of the book.
Many factors have contributed to the lack of accuracy and comprehensiveness of some of the works as far as the lists are concerned. These factors include lack of well-defined rules in the organisation of these works and the fact that the original literary works were not always available for the reader to check the source of information, as well as the inaccuracy of the secondary sources or references on which the authors based their data.

Examples of shortcomings include:

1. Dates of publication are missing.
2. A specific calendar is not used.
3. Sometimes there is no mention of publisher or place of publication, or both.
4. Bibliographical description varies from thorough to brief.
5. There are books listed with the surnames of authors or their forename. Some surnames have not been used if the author's name is well known.
6. There are differences in entry for the same book.
7. Some details, such as the volume of the printed materials, and to what extent the book contains details such as illustrative pictures and maps etc., are almost completely overlooked. Sometimes a reference is restricted to the number of pages only.
8. In some cases there is no reference to the details of publication, for example, the place of publication. In others, there is only reference to the printing house instead of the publisher.
9. There is no indication of whether works were originally scientific research in fulfilment of an academic degree.
7.6 ORGANISATION

Different methods of organisation.
Although some of the works such as Al-Attar's, Al-Anani's Catalogue and Bibliographical Study, Sa'ati's 'Writing...', 'Arabic...', and 'Reference...' have followed the subject approach in organising the content, there are still differences in the approach adopted. Al-Attar, for example, divides his work into six general subject sections: Islamic studies, Arabic language, history, literature and sociology, poetry and novels.

The items within each part are entered according to no specific method. They are given serial numbers from 1 to 231. These parts are succeeded by two others: the first one is a list of the books published at the expense of HM King Abdul Aziz Al-Saud, and the second consists of those published at the expense of notable men of the KSA. At the end there is a list of books in print (some books are mentioned twice, in the main part and in the second one).

Al-Anani's Catalogue on the other hand, is divided into three main parts, Part 1 contains ten sections: general, philosophy and psychology, religious studies, social sciences, language, pure sciences, applied sciences, fine arts, literature and geography, biographies and history, organised according to the DDC. Yet he does not follow the detailed sub-classification and numbering of DDC. Part 2 is dedicated to governmental literature and the third part contains school textbooks. Books in the three parts are arranged alphabetically according to the author's name.
Sa'ati in his 'Writing ...' and 'Arabic ...' arranged the works alphabetically according to authors' names, subdivided under subject headings selected from the list of Arab subject headings prepared originally at King Saud University by the Department of Cataloguing and Classification.

Al-Anani's Bibliographical Study lists books under subjects according to DDC and the books are then organised in alphabetical order according to names of authors, whereas in Sa'ati and Al-Kahtani's 'Reference ...', the books are arranged according to DDC, without sub-classification, as follows: catalogues, guides, religion, social sciences, Arabic language, pure sciences, applied sciences, arts, literature, history and biographies, geography and genealogy. The various works are classified according to the names of their authors, either the first name, the surname, the father's name or the grandfather's name. The works published by official authorities are under the name of the country followed by that of the Ministry or Department, and then the branch. Al-Tahir has not paid any attention to subject arrangement. He follows an alphabetical classification of author names. Al-Rifa'ai lists the works in title alphabetical order. Al-Dubib uses author alphabetical order. In Al-Anani's Catalogue and Sa'ati's 'Writing...', and 'Arabic...', serial numbers are given to the cards (starting from the first to the end of the work). The exact number of the titles is not given. Some numbers have been repeated with a letter and some numbers are missed out.

Although Al-Attar lacks any index in his works, other works include an index of authors and titles or simply authors.
In the indexes to Sa'ati's and Anani's works, we notice that the compilers do not use any special method of indexing to refer to the books.

SUMMARY

Most of the bibliographic works dealing with the KSA have been produced for specific purposes such as a conference, a book fair or an occasional study. They can be seen as literary or academic work. These works have been produced by scholars who are men of letters, educationalists, librarians, and administrators who feel a need for a bibliographic work in their field of interest.

The works have covered 198 years, during which they estimate that 9229 books have been produced, including private publications, government publications, children's books, and school books. Some of them include a small number of manuscripts, books in press and articles in newspapers and magazines. The bibliographical works appeared at different periods and sometimes overlapped. They have covered all subjects in Arabic and a small number of other languages.

What is important is that none of these works can be regarded as retrospective national bibliography, for the following reasons:

1. They were not originally meant to be national bibliographies since they were produced for special occasions or to satisfy a need in a specific field.
2. They lack the basic rules of bibliography such as the specification of the period covered, references, ordering of items, organisation, limits of coverage etc.

3. It appears from a study of the works that in 198 years Saudi intellectual writing must have produced 9229 books. At such a level the rate of publication would be only 47 books a year.

4. However, the listed works probably cover at best less than 70% of Saudi publications.

We cannot say that these works are useless, because if they do not constitute a retrospective bibliography, they can be used to produce one. The researcher will need to make further efforts to establish the merits and limitations of these works, before himself embarking on the compilation of a comprehensive bibliography.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>References and Biographies</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>


10. MUSTAPHA HUSEIN ATTAR was born in 1353H (1933 AD). He graduated from Al-sharyah College in 1954. Then he obtained his MA from the School of Education at the Lincoln centre at Fordham University, USA in 1978. He has worked in the Educational field all his life. Letter to the researcher on 28.3.1990.

11. ALI JAWAD AL-TAHIR was born in Iraq in 1919. He obtained his Doctorate d'Etat in Literature from Paris University: the Sorbonne. He has written 21 books. He also worked as a university lecturer in Baghdad and Riyadh. Dr Al-Tahir collected the necessary data and illustrations for his Catalogue during his stay in the KSA from 11.10.1963 (21.5.1385) to 22.6.1968 (26.3.1388). As can be observed in his Catalogue, he followed Saudi writing with great interest while he was teaching in Riyadh at King Saud University and also after he had left the KSA. Al-Tahir op. cit, volume 1 p 11, 14, volume 11 p 729.

12. ABDUL AZIZ AL-RIFA'AI. Born in Omloj in 1922, retired, former adviser to the Royal Court, Owner and Chairman of Dar Al-Rifaai for publishing, printing and distribution, he has had many contributions in newspapers, magazines and journals. He is the co-founder of the world book and periodical magazine with Abdul Rahman Al-Muamar. He also written several books on Literature. WHO'S WHO IN SAUDI ARABIA 1983-84, 3rd Ed prepared by TIHAMA Publications, p 234.
13. AHMAD MUHAMMAD AL-DUBIB. Born in Makkah in 1935, he received his BA from Cairo University in 1960, and obtained his PhD degree at Leeds University in 1966. He was appointed as a Professor in the Arabic Department in King Saud University. Many of his books have been translated into other languages. He also written books on literature as well as articles for newspapers and magazine. On 10.3.1990, 13.8.1410 he was appointed by Royal Decree as Director of King Saud University.


14. SHUKRI AL-ANANI. He was born in 1943 in Cairo. He graduated (BSc) from the Department of Library and Documentation in the Faculty of Arts at Cairo University in 1964 AD. He worked in the National Book House in Cairo from 1964 to 1970, before joining the Ministry of Education in the KSA. He worked in the NBH from 1970 to 1973, where he had the opportunity to produce his works. Interview with the author on 12.10.1409.

15. YAHYA MAHMUD SA'ATI. He was born in Makkah in 1366H (1946 AD). He graduated from the Arabic Department, Faculty of Arts, KSA. Then he obtained his MA from the School of Libraries and Information at the University of Missouri, USA in 1967, and PhD in Literature from the Department of Libraries and Documents in the Faculty of Arts, University of Cairo, in 1983. A lecturer in the Department of Library and Information Studies in the Faculty of Social Sciences at the Imam Muhammad Ibn Saud University from mid 1400H(1980AD) up to the present time, he became head of King Fahd Library in March 1990. Interview with the author on 8.10.1409.

17. AL-ATTAR, op. cit, p.41.

18. AL-TAHIR, op. cit, volume 1 pl1, 12, 17, 50, Volume II, op cit, p 608.


20. SA'ATI, Writing and Publishing op. cit, p.3-4.


22. AL-ANANI, KSA, a Bibliographical Study, op. cit, p.5.

23. SA'ATI and KAHTANI, References and Publications of the KSA, op. cit, p.3.

24. AL-RIFA'AI, op. cit, p.4.

25. AL-DUBIB, op. cit, p.5.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Works</th>
<th>From</th>
<th>To</th>
<th>Main Part</th>
<th>Grand total</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Date</td>
<td>Date</td>
<td>In Out No</td>
<td>No total</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Attar</td>
<td></td>
<td>1384(1964)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Anani Catalogue</td>
<td>1303(1885)</td>
<td>1394(1974)</td>
<td>563 557 302 58</td>
<td>1178 1640</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 Sa'ati Writing</td>
<td>1390(1970)</td>
<td>1399(1979)</td>
<td>595 201 24</td>
<td>- 796 796</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 Sa'ati Arabic</td>
<td>1313(1893)</td>
<td>1399(1979)</td>
<td>233 282 74 16</td>
<td>531 531</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 Anani Bib Study</td>
<td>1285(1865)</td>
<td>1397(1977)</td>
<td>625 511 256</td>
<td>312 1257</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 Sa'ati Reference</td>
<td>1294(1874)</td>
<td>1391(1971)</td>
<td>123 312 117 53</td>
<td>488 488</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 Al-Tahir</td>
<td>1206(1786)</td>
<td>1404(1984)</td>
<td>717 1122</td>
<td>316 1081 2920 3879</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 Al-Rifa'ai</td>
<td>1342(1922)</td>
<td>1398(1978)</td>
<td>7 39 52 52</td>
<td>98 98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9 Al-Dubib</td>
<td>1300(1883)</td>
<td>1343(1923)</td>
<td>210 - 82</td>
<td>- 210 210</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TOTAL:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>198</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### TABLE 7.1: TOTAL PRODUCTION OF BOOKS SHOWN IN ALL THE WORKS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Years</th>
<th>1390</th>
<th>1391</th>
<th>1392</th>
<th>1393</th>
<th>Total</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1970</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1971</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1972</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1973</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number of books in main part</th>
<th>Anani</th>
<th>Sa'ati</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>36</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>45</td>
<td>51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>36</td>
<td>68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>16</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### TABLE 7.2: DISTRIBUTION OF BOOKS IN ANANI AND SA'ATI
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Years</th>
<th>1390 (1970)</th>
<th>1391 (1971)</th>
<th>1392 (1972)</th>
<th>1393 (1973)</th>
<th>Total</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Number of books the same</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>82</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**TABLE 7.3: BOOKS CORRESPONDING IN BOTH WORKS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Books only in Anani</th>
<th>1390</th>
<th>1391</th>
<th>1392</th>
<th>1393</th>
<th>Total</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Books only in Sa'ati</th>
<th>1390</th>
<th>1391</th>
<th>1392</th>
<th>1393</th>
<th>Total</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>17</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>98</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**TABLE 7.4: BOOKS MENTIONED EITHER IN ANANI ONLY OR IN SA'ATI ONLY**
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>In the KSA</th>
<th>Abroad</th>
<th>Unspecified Places</th>
<th>Total</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Generalities</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Philosophy and Psychology</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Religion</td>
<td>210</td>
<td>206</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>435</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Social Sciences</td>
<td>65</td>
<td>46</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Languages</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pure Sciences</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Applied Sciences</td>
<td>38</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fine Arts</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Literature</td>
<td>83</td>
<td>147</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>235</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Geography, Biographies and History</td>
<td>131</td>
<td>119</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>258</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>TOTALS:</strong></td>
<td><strong>563</strong></td>
<td><strong>557</strong></td>
<td><strong>58</strong></td>
<td><strong>1178</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>%</td>
<td>47.79</td>
<td>47.29</td>
<td>4.92</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**TABLE 7.5:** PLACE OF PRINTING AND PUBLISHING AS SHOWN IN ANANI'S CATALOGUE
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>City Subject</th>
<th>Jeddha</th>
<th>Al-Madina</th>
<th>Riyadh</th>
<th>Taif</th>
<th>Eastern District</th>
<th>Makkah</th>
<th>Al-Jawf</th>
<th>Al-Ihsa</th>
<th>Total</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>General</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Philosophy/Psychology</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Religion</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>95</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>77</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>210</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Social Sciences</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Language</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pure Sciences</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Applied Sciences</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fine Arts</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Literature</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Geography, Biographies, and History</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>68</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>131</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TOTAL:</td>
<td>96</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>265</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>145</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>563</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Percentage:</td>
<td>17.05</td>
<td>4.44</td>
<td>47.07</td>
<td>1.94</td>
<td>3.02</td>
<td>25.76</td>
<td>0.18</td>
<td>0.54</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**TABLE 7.6: PLACES OF PUBLICATION IN THE KSA IN ANANI'S CATALOGUE**
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>State: Egypt</th>
<th>Lebanon</th>
<th>Iraq</th>
<th>India</th>
<th>Pakistan</th>
<th>Kuwait</th>
<th>Syria</th>
<th>Tunisia</th>
<th>Qatar: Total</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Total:</td>
<td>356</td>
<td>122</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>56</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>%</td>
<td>63.92</td>
<td>21.90</td>
<td>1.81</td>
<td>1.26</td>
<td>0.17</td>
<td>0.54</td>
<td>10.06</td>
<td>0.17</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

TABLE 7.7: BOOKS PRINTED OUTSIDE THE KSA IN ANANI'S CATALOGUE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>City</th>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Percentage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Riyadh</td>
<td>319</td>
<td>54.81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jeddah</td>
<td>133</td>
<td>22.85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Al-Taif</td>
<td>59</td>
<td>10.14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Makkah</td>
<td>33</td>
<td>5.67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Al-Madina</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>2.58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ha'il</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>1.55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jizan</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>1.20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Al-Dammam</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>0.52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abha</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0.34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Al-Ahsa</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Najran</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.17</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

TOTAL 582 100%

TABLE 7.8: BOOKS PUBLISHED AND PRINTED INSIDE THE KSA IN SA'ATI'S WRITING AND PUBLICATION
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Country</th>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Percentage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Egypt</td>
<td>96</td>
<td>49.23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lebanon</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>33.85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Syria</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>4.62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tunisia</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>4.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>England</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>2.56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Morocco</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>2.56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Qatar</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>1.54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>USA</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1.03</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kuwait</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.51</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

TOTAL: 195 100%

TABLE 7.9: BOOKS PUBLISHED OUTSIDE THE KSA IN SA’ATI’S WRITING AND PUBLICATION
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>City:</th>
<th>Al-Khubar</th>
<th>Damman</th>
<th>Abha</th>
<th>Al-Ahsa</th>
<th>Al-Medina</th>
<th>Makkah</th>
<th>Taif</th>
<th>Jeddah</th>
<th>Jizan</th>
<th>Riyadh</th>
<th>TOTAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>No:</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>47</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>104</td>
<td>233</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**TABLE 7.10: BOOKS PRINTED AND PUBLISHED WITHIN THE KSA IN SA’ATI’S 'ARABIC...’**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>City:</th>
<th>Baghdad</th>
<th>Bombay</th>
<th>Tunis</th>
<th>Doha</th>
<th>Kuwait</th>
<th>Adan</th>
<th>Damascus</th>
<th>Cairo</th>
<th>Beirut</th>
<th>TOTAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>No:</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>162</td>
<td>83</td>
<td>282</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**TABLE 7.11: BOOKS PRINTED AND PUBLISHED OUTSIDE THE KSA IN SA’ATI’S 'ARABIC...’**
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUBJECT</th>
<th>ADAN</th>
<th>DAVESA</th>
<th>NAJAF</th>
<th>USA</th>
<th>KARACHI</th>
<th>LEEDEN</th>
<th>HALAP</th>
<th>JERUSALEM</th>
<th>GENEVA</th>
<th>KUIRTOWN</th>
<th>ALEXANDRIA</th>
<th>ALGERIA</th>
<th>JAKARTA</th>
<th>DUBAI</th>
<th>ONAN</th>
<th>BOMBAY</th>
<th>KUWAIT</th>
<th>DAMASCUS</th>
<th>BAGHDAD</th>
<th>BEIRUT</th>
<th>CAIRO</th>
<th>TOTAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Generalities</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Religion</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Social Sciences</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>42</td>
<td>92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arabic Language &amp; Dialects</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Customs &amp; Traditions</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>General Sciences</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Applied Sciences</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Literature</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>92</td>
<td>147</td>
<td>301</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TOTAL:</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>140</td>
<td>271</td>
<td>511</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**TABLE 7.12:**  GEOGRAPHICAL DISTRIBUTION OF BOOKS PUBLISHED OUTSIDE THE KSA IN ANANI'S BIBLIOGRAPHICAL STUDY
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>City/Subject</th>
<th>Taif</th>
<th>Dhafram</th>
<th>Al-Jawf</th>
<th>Kubar</th>
<th>Daman</th>
<th>Madina</th>
<th>Asear</th>
<th>Mekkah</th>
<th>Riyadh</th>
<th>Jeddah</th>
<th>Total</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Generalities</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Religion</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Social Sciences</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>150</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>197</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arabic Language and Dialects</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Customs and Traditions</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Theoretical Sciences</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Applied Sciences</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>88</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Literature</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>148</td>
<td>66</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>246</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>TOTAL:</strong></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>162</td>
<td>342</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>625</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**TABLE 7.13: GEOGRAPHICAL DISTRIBUTION OF BOOKS PUBLISHED WITHIN THE KSA IN ANANI'S BIBLIOGRAPHICAL STUDY**
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name of City:</th>
<th>Riyadh</th>
<th>Jeddah</th>
<th>Makkah</th>
<th>Al-Jhuf</th>
<th>Dhahran</th>
<th>Al-Ahsa</th>
<th>Taif</th>
<th>Madina</th>
<th>Total</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Number of books:</td>
<td>51</td>
<td>33</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>123</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

TABLE 7.14: BOOKS PUBLISHED INSIDE THE KSA IN SA'ATI'S REFERENCE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name of City or Country:</th>
<th>Cairo</th>
<th>Damascus</th>
<th>Beirut</th>
<th>Baghdad</th>
<th>Bombay</th>
<th>Rabat</th>
<th>Amman</th>
<th>Germany</th>
<th>Jakarta</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Number of Books:</td>
<td>177</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marrakesh</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Najaf</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lathkiak</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Halap</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fas</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leiden</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Estanah</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leibnerg</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alexandria</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Hayfa</th>
<th>Absala</th>
<th>Total</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>312</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

TABLE 7.15: BOOKS PUBLISHED OUTSIDE THE KSA IN SA'ATI'S 'REFERENCES..'

223
8.1 PRELUDE

A careful look into UNESCO statistics reveals that the demographic explosion in general, and in the Arab World in particular, is a problem faced by humanity today. The statistics [1] show the demographic growth between 1970 and 1987 and [2] show the increasing growth in the Arab countries.

The estimate of world population in the year 2000 is displayed [3]. We notice that the Arab World will have a large increase in population and that the rate of illiterate people will be higher than in other countries [4]. Although the rate of illiteracy in the Arab World is decreasing, it is doing so very slowly. It is worth noting that the statistics presented by UNESCO in 1977 focused only on the Democratic Yemen, Egypt, Lebanon, Jordan, Morocco, Somalia, Sudan and Syria. These statistics are out of date because they dealt with 1973, 1975 and 1976.

Newer statistics have been produced by various other Arab countries.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Country</th>
<th>Illiteracy Year</th>
<th>Illiteracy Percentage</th>
<th>Percentage Year</th>
<th>Percentage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bahrain</td>
<td>1971</td>
<td>59.8%</td>
<td>1981</td>
<td>30.2%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kuwait</td>
<td>1970</td>
<td>45.0%</td>
<td>1980</td>
<td>32.5%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Algeria</td>
<td>1971</td>
<td>73.6%</td>
<td>1982</td>
<td>55.3%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tunisia</td>
<td>1975</td>
<td>62.0%</td>
<td>1980</td>
<td>53.5%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saudi Arabia</td>
<td>1962</td>
<td>95.0%</td>
<td>1981</td>
<td>48.9%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Although these statistics are some 9 years old, it is clear that the rate of illiteracy is decreasing. In Saudi Arabia it came down by 46% in some 20 years, Bahrain by 30% in 10 years and in Tunisia by 9% in 5 years. This is an indication of a healthy phenomenon. If there were any statistics for 1990, there would be a clearer and more accurate picture of the development in the efforts to decrease illiteracy in the Arab world.

The question we should ask is, does the Arab World's contribution to intellectual production match the demographic growth?

Before answering this question let us look briefly at the world's book production [5]. We notice that Europe in 1987 excluded Britain. In 1986 the Oceania production shown was confined to Australia and in 1987 to New Caledonia. No other country was mentioned.

Moreover, we notice that Asia's production in 1987 is less than that of 1986, 1985 and 1984. That is because the number of countries covered in 1987 is less than that of the previous years.

Regarding the Arab World's production which is presented in the 1988-89 UNESCO statistics, we find that only Algeria, Egypt, Kuwait, Qatar and Tunisia are covered. There is much inconsistency in the countries mentioned year by year.

As far as subjects are concerned, the researcher has covered the production of 50 countries in 1987 [6]. These are the most recent statistics to the best of his knowledge. A careful study revealed that
most of the books focused on political science, law, public administration, medical science, literature (history, criticism and literary texts), religion, theology, engineering, crafts, education and leisure. The less numerous subjects were: military art, trade, transport, performing arts, sociology, statistics, domestic science, plastic arts, ethnography, folklore, planning, architecture, generalities, philosophy and psychology.

In the Arab countries as shown in Chapter 4, Table 4.4, we find that the main interests were religion, social science, literature, general geography and history. Of less interest were arts, pure science, language, philosophy and related disciplines and generalities. There is a difference in classification systems: the Arab world uses DDC, the rest UDC.

In translation [7] Egypt was top of the Arab world; there were 142 books translated during 1981. Translators gave priority to religion, social sciences and literature. During 1982 and 1983 no translation was recorded. In Tunisia 20 books were translated in 1981 and 1982, the focus being on arts, literature, geography and history. The source languages in translation are mainly English in Egypt and French in Tunisia.

We find that in Britain the books published in 1989 [8] were 61,195 including 15,153 reprints and new editions, 1598 translated and 59 limited editions, mainly in the fields of fiction, children's books and political science and economics.
In the USSR, we find that 21810 books were translated in 1981-83, mainly in literature and social sciences, from English, French and German.

More specifically speaking, we find that the most translated disciplines are literature, social sciences and arts, from English to French, German and Russian. This predominance of translation from English is because of the importance of English as a world language. English is an influential and growing language, spoken in areas widely scattered over the world. It is the native or official language of one fifth of the earth's surface, being used throughout most of North America and in the British Isles, Australia, New Zealand and the Republic of South Africa. Because of Britain's colonial past the language has been carried into Africa, Asia and beyond. Also the use of English is widespread in international trade, scholarship, and research. More than half of the world's scientific and technical journals, and newspapers, are printed in English [9].

8.2 DIFFERENCES IN BIBLIOGRAPHY IN EGYPT, TUNISIA AND THE KSA

8.2.1 Publisher

In contrast with ENB and TMB it is clear that the bibliographical works published in the KSA tend to be the fruit of individuals who are men of letters, educationalists and librarians, each trying to produce the type of work needed in his field. Thus these works reflected the nature of the field they served. They were also produced with wide time gaps between them.
Although there is a National Library in the KSA, its role is very limited. It has published a catalogue of Saudi publications compiled and edited under the name of "Shukri Al-Anani", because he was involved in its production during his time of employment there. This catalogue has been criticised by librarians for its shortcomings [10], which shows that the national library is not playing its role as it should. The bibliographic works by other authors are, however, quite effective and useful.

Although these bibliographical works have covered a very limited number of publications, they have succeeded in showing the thread of Saudi intellectual production in the past decades. They have paved the way for production of more comprehensive bibliographies in the future, and are the main sources for planning a retrospective national bibliography from the introduction of printing in the KSA until the publication of the current national bibliography.

8.2.2 Occasions and Frequency of Publication

As detailed in Chapter 7, the bibliographical works in the KSA by various authors have been produced by different methods and on various occasions such as:

- Al-Attar, which was produced for the visitors to the Tenth Arab Book Fair in Lebanon.
- Al-Anani, which is a catalogue produced on the occasion of the First Conference of Arab Book Bibliographic Preparation held in Riyadh 1393/1973.
- Al-Saati's "Writing and Publishing Movement in the KSA", a study of publications in the KSA.
- Al-Saati, "Arabic Literature", a haphazard approach.
- Al-Anani, "The KSA, bibliographical study", to serve researchers and students.
- Al-Saati and Al-Kahtani, "References and Publications on the KSA", for general use.
- Al-Tahir, an academic and literary research of interest to all those interested in Saudi Arabian writing.
- Al-Riffaai who spoke on the history of King Abdulaziz in an international conference held by Imam Mohammed Ibn Saud Islamic University in 1406/1986.
- Al-Dubib was more concerned with the contribution of printing to the intellectual development in the country.

The mode of publication varied according to the occasion the works were produced for. They were not produced on a regular basis and the authors have had no collaboration in organising their works. Although they have weak points (Chapter 7) and have been published in different periods and for different reasons and purposes, these bibliographical works have served the periods in which they were published and have covered whatever was within the ability of the compiler to cover. Without these efforts, the Saudi book would have remained without identity, as Tashkandi [11] wrote, and the Saudi writer would have remained isolated and unknown to other intellectuals.

The publication of the ENB has also varied in form. It has been a quarterly, cumulative of five years, bi-annual, annual, monthly, then
it settled as a quarterly with the fourth issue including a yearly cumulative index. Final consistency is made possible because there is only one publisher. The researcher believes that the current consistency in publication is also attributed to the benefit drawn from previous experience. Alongside this there is an administrative and financial consistency, together with an accurate and scientific outlook. All this has made this bibliography more comprehensive and effective than the previous ones.

The TNB was published as a bi-monthly, quarterly, four-monthly, bi-annual, and in 1987 ten issues during the whole year. Although the publishers are government controlled they could not settle on a regular method of publication, which is very unhelpful to the user. The inconsistency in publication is attributed to the lack of experience in the bibliographical apparatus and financial inconsistency, although there has been administrative consistency and the same person in charge for a long period.

8.2.3 Period of Coverage

The ENB has been produced since 1955. Having studied the first sample of the 1978 bulletin of July, August and September, we find that it contains books printed in 1964, 1974, 1975, 1976 and 1977. The second sample of the 1984 bulletin of January, February and March, contained books of 1980, 1981, 1982 and 1983. This delay is most probably due to the printing conditions and shortcomings in editing.

The TNB has been produced since 1970. A study of the yearly cumulative issue of 1986 published in 1987, reveals that it contains
only two books printed in 1985 and none for earlier years and this is a sign of integrity as far as temporal coverage is concerned. However, this cannot be fairly compared with what is printed in Egypt because the difference in book production between the two countries is large.

As far as the Saudi bibliographical works are concerned, we find that Al-Tahir covered the period between 1206 (1786) and 1404 (1984). That is 198 years and the other works have not gone beyond these limits. Chapter 7, Table 7.1 shows the beginning of each work with the number of books listed.

From Table 7.1 we notice the overlap from one work to another in the periods of publication. They are not consecutive. Each work contains some books without date or place of publication. If we give careful consideration to the place of publication of these bibliographical works, we notice that it would have been possible for them to be serial:

a) Most of them were published in Riyadh or the idea originated from Riyadh, and the work was published outside the city (e.g. Al-Tahir's and Al-Anani's works). Al-Attar's work was published in Riyadh for although he does not mention the place of publication, the Ministry of Education where he works is in Riyadh.

b) Some of these works have benefited from their predecessors or knowledge of publications such as Al-Tahir, Al-Sa'ati (writing and publishing movement ...) and Al-Anani's works (see date of publication of works, Chapter 7).
c) In this case the books which had already been covered should not have been mentioned to avoid repetition. A non-specialist author might be excused for such a shortcoming but librarian authors should have made more efforts to avoid unnecessary repetition.

d) Although Al-Tahir's catalogue is purely literary, the author makes many references to Al-Anani's and Al-Sa'ati's works. Al-Anani in his works, on the other hand, has not referred to Al-Tahir's articles published in Al-Arab magazine under the same title as Anani's book [12].

e) If we look at the number of books for each work we do not find it to be very large.

f) The study of these works in Chapter 7 gives more information on these points.

8.2.4 Types of Coverage
The TNB covers academic theses and a list of new periodicals and also covers books in French.

8.2.5 Numbers of Books Covered
Table 7.1, Chapter 7, shows that in 198 years 9696 books have been produced in Saudi Arabia including those which have been repeated in the listing. The yearly rate is 49 books. It is unlikely that these figures are correct. These underestimates are mainly due to the lack of a national bibliography.
In Tunisia, because of the existence of a national bibliography, the book production recorded from 1976 to 1986, that is within 11 years, reached 9281 books. In Egypt the number of books reported in the main part of the 1986 ENB was 1502.

Both the ENB and TNB have their flaws. The whole coverage is not more than about 80%, yet this is a considerable proportion for developing countries.

8.2.6 Bibliographical Description

British National Bibliography (BNB), a well known model, gives the following description [13]:

"The fullest information about a book is given in the classified subject catalogue including the form of name used by the author in his books, the full title, edition, publisher, date of publication and the series, as well as the number of pages, the kind of illustrations, the size, the ISBN and the price".

In addition to this, there is the book number in the current BNB. Bibliographical works issued in Saudi Arabia have not adopted any specific method of bibliographical description. Some mentioned the author and the title, others went beyond that. Librarians, for example, mentioned the author's name, the book title, date of publication, page numbers, and sometimes illustrations, series and the serial number of the book. There is, however, inaccuracy in description and lack of certain data such as date of publication in most of the works. Entries are made according to the first name, surname or pen name.
The ENB has applied the ISBD since 1981. Each card contains order number and serial number of entry. The TNB card for each book contains type of binding number and date of deposition in the house and type of deposition (compulsory or optional).

The sample of ENB studied (Chapter 5) was taken from issues after the ISBD had already been applied for three years. The result of the first sample study of 1978 was that among a total of 380 books in the main part, 310 books did not mention the edition, one the place of publication and one the publisher, the year was mentioned in all, 187 mentioned the price and 85 mentioned the ISBN.

Although these defects are not very serious, the ENB had no excuse because the ISBD was in its third year of application. This should have been enough for all regulations to be implemented properly.

In the second sample, of the 1984 issue, we find that among a total of 329 books, 250 did not mention the edition, 81 the place of publication, 74 the publisher, 7 the year, 231 the price and 208 the ISBN.

We notice that in the six years between the first and second samples, the ENB did not improve; rather it became more neglectful of regulations.

The 1986 issue of the TNB, published in 1987 (Chapter 6), contained 158 books. 103 of them in the main part did not mention the edition, 15 the publishers, 31 the price, and no book mentioned the ISBN. The
TNB observes the regulations better than the ENB but this is not as good as it seems at first glance, taking into account the small number of books produced in Tunisia or by Tunisian authors. The TNB should, in fact, be far more accurate. What would become of the TNB if the number of publications was near to that of the Egyptian Bibliography, knowing that with this small number it has so many errors.

8.2.7 Organisation

The Saudi bibliographical works have most often only one part, in Arabic. They usually follow the DDC in the classification of subjects. There are some books which are classified alphabetically by the author's name according to the King Saud University subject heading system. Some of the bibliographers adopted the DDC author name system. Others mentioned the author and his works, using either his surname, pen name, first name or middle name, or under the book title. Some works included the author and title indexes only.

8.2.8 Deposit Law

The aims of deposition are:

1. Quantity coverage of publications, which means control of statistics of number of copies printed.
2. Control of production in terms of content.
3. Building up assets to enrich the Library with national production.
4. To produce a comprehensive national bibliography.
5. To protect the author's copyright.

Because the laws were issued at different periods and various times, they differ in their content in Egypt and Tunisia and KSA. They do not
agree on the party responsible for the reception of the deposited copies, the number of copies, whether the works published outside the country should be deposited, or the amount of the penalty for the breach of the law.

While the Tunisian law does not account for books published outside the country, the Egyptian law made it compulsory for Egyptian authors to deposit copies of their works published abroad. The Tunisian law made deposition compulsory in some cases and optional in others, whereas the Egyptian law makes deposition compulsory in all cases.

In Chapters 5 and 6 concerned with Egypt and Tunisia, we find that deposition constitutes the most problematic issue in these countries. It is actually a problem found in many other countries of the same background. The incompleteness of the list of books in the AID is partly due to the lack of the appreciation of the importance of deposition. It is also partly due to the large number of copies required to be deposited. In Egypt for example, 10 copies are required and in Tunisia 11 copies.

After the Royal approval for the protection of author's rights in the Kingdom was issued one talked about 'deposition regulation':

1. Article 12 of the Fifth Publication System states that the author, the publisher, or the distributor have the responsibility for deposition of 5 copies free of charge in the National Book House. The twenty sixth article of Chapter 5 in the depository regulations provides, in the first paragraph, that the authors,
publishers and printers of publications must cooperate to deposit 5 copies in the National Book House. The new regulations have made it compulsory for the three people concerned with publication to deposit the required number of copies. No clear specification has been made. Unlike the old law which mentions the distributor as one of the people responsible for deposition, the new regulations mention the printer.

2. A deposition of 3 copies of artistic items and compilations in the Library of the Saudi Arabian Association for Culture and Art was introduced in Riyadh.

3. The deposition period was specified as 30 days from the date of publication, whereas it had been publication without any time specification.

4. In the case of reprinting a publication with additions the terms of deposition are applicable.

5. The depository regulations mention "publications printed in many copies" but the executive leaflet specifies the number of copies. The phrase "many copies" is ambiguous. Is there an exception from deposition if the work appears in a small number of copies? The phrase many copies should have been replaced by 3000 copies in which case 5 copies should be deposited, and in the case of 200 copies one copy should be deposited.
6. What is new in the regulations is the pecuniary penalty for the offenders which is not less than 1000 RS and not more than 5000 RS according to the nature of the offence.

7. Nothing has been mentioned about the six copies deposited with the Administration.

8. Although it has been mentioned earlier in this work that the role of the Publication Administration is confined to the control of publications, the issuance of the new depository regulations show that cooperation between the Administration and the National Book House in controlling deposition is possible.

8.3 SIMILARITIES IN BIBLIOGRAPHY IN EGYPT, TUNISIA AND THE KSA

8.3.1 Publisher
The ENB and TNB are produced by the Bibliographical Administration in the National Library, i.e. the institution related directly to the bibliography.

8.3.2 Geographical Coverage
Although Article 4 of the Egyptian Depository Law states that Egyptians publishing their works outside the country should deposit five copies, the ENB covers works published in Egypt only. This is due to the Egyptian authors' avoidance and evasion of deposition because of the large number of copies to be deposited, a weak control and low penalty. Thus deposition is neglected despite an explicit Egyptian depository law.
The Tunisian depository law does not mention anything concerning publications by Tunisians outside the country. For this reason the TNB is void of books published outside Tunisia. In the Retrospective National Bibliography, however, there are books printed outside Tunisia. The excuse of the TNB may be that it has not been mentioned in the text of the law. Books being mentioned in the retrospective bibliography are optional.

The bibliographical works in Saudi Arabia, on the other hand, cover books published inside the Kingdom and some extend their coverage to those published outside the Kingdom. They remain, however, random. The reason for this difference is that Saudi retrospective bibliographers had enough time to carry out extensive research. This latter fact is supported in that the Saudi works are stimulated by individual efforts and done to satisfy specific conditions. Al-Anani has benefited from his work in the National Book House as a Librarian and Al-Sa'ati from his work in King Saud University Library. They were in the field therefore made their observations easily. They paid a lot of attention to the arrangement of their compilations. However the randomness of their work is shown by the following facts. Al-Anani made a lot of repetition in his catalogue and in Al Sa'ati's writing and publication..., we find that the serial numbers are from 1 to 767, although the real number of books are 796 because some numbers were repeated with a letter such as 346, 346A, 337, 337A, 337B. The second evidence is that some bibliographical data were not complete in Al-Sa'ati and Al-Anani such as place of publication, size of imprint, data of publication. That is certainly due to the lack of checking the book directly.
8.3.3 Types of Coverage

The ENB covers books, government imprints, school books and children and young people's books in all languages, especially in English besides Arabic as the language of publication. The coverage is not confined to any nationality of authors.

The TNB also covers books in all languages, especially French, besides Arabic and children's and school books.

Most of the Saudi bibliographical works cover books only in most cases in Arabic apart from a very few exceptions in English, Persian or Gawi. These last two are negligible in number. Some of these works also cover children's and school books and government publications. (In Al-Anani's Catalogue some government publications were included in the main part). Al-Tahir's for example, includes books, government publications, children's books, manuscripts and books in press. Al-Saati's "Arabic Literature in Saudi Arabia" covers literary articles, magazines and Saudi newspapers, besides books.

8.3.4 Subject Coverage

In Egypt, Tunisia and Saudi Arabia, we find that bibliographies cover all subjects but with specific emphasis on books of humanities: literature, history, religion, social sciences. The least noted are arts and pure sciences.

This is due to:

a) The educational basis was more specific to religious studies (as Islamic countries), humanities and literature. It was less
concerned with vocational professional studies, mathematics, engineering and the like. That was notable especially in the KSA. In the North African countries more importance was given to professions like agriculture, animal breeding and fishing. The lack of science, engineering and professional studies was because of education being neglected in the occupation era.

b) The first point resulted in a scarcity of publications and specialised writers interested in scientific disciplines.

c) It also led to lack of general and specialised translations.

d) Reading in scientific disciplines was rare, because people were more interested in the other subjects noted.

8.3.5 Bibliographical Description

The ENB and TNB cards contain (according to sample 1.2) the author's name, book title, co-author, if any, translators, editors, place of publication, name of publisher, date of publication, number of pages, name of series, number of books in the series, price of book, serial number of decimal classification and the ISBN.

8.3.6 Organisation

The BNB is in three sections [14]: "in the first, or classified subject catalogue, the entries are arranged according to the Dewey Decimal System of subject classification: in the second, the entries are arranged alphabetically by authors, titles, editions and series. The third section, the Subject Index, is an alphabetical index of subjects appearing in the classified subject catalogue". 
Both the TNB and the ENB agree on the division into two main parts: one in Arabic, which reads from right to left and the other in foreign languages, which reads from left to right.

The Arabic part in the ENB contains a main part which lists publications of commercial publishing houses, government publications, school books and the children and young people's books. These are ordered according to their subjects, and books dealing with the same subject are put consecutive to each other in accordance with the DDC. In the catalogue the ISBD was adopted. The indexes include the author index, the subject heading index and the publisher and printer index. The same organisation was applied in the foreign part.

In the TNB, the main Arabic part includes government publications, non-government publications, school books and academic theses. These are ordered according to the CDU and the catalogue is according to the ISBD. It also includes indexes of titles, authors, publishers and printers and subjects. The same applies to the foreign part. Organisation in Egypt and Tunisia is good in respect of the languages of publication (Arabic-English) in each bibliography and quality i.e. the organisation of publications is in the form: publishing houses' publications, governments, childrens, and schools. In Tunisia there are the academic theses and the new publishing houses. The cataloguing and classification are also of good quality and compatible to the Arabic languages.
SUMMARY

If we look carefully at the figures, tables and statistics around the world, and in the Arab world in particular, we find that when the population in the developing countries, including the Arab ones increases, it does not do so at the same rate as the developed countries. It is also noticeable that illiteracy is non-existent in many countries, whereas there is still a high rate of illiteracy in the Arab world. The statistics confirm that book production is on the increase in Europe with a literate population and the rise in income and living standards. There is also an increase in the number of writers, publishers, printers, and most of all readers.

As well as a low living standard and high rate of illiteracy in the Arab world, there is also a dissatisfaction with printed works by the readership. Another problem is the high cost of publishing.

These problems are becoming more serious due to the lack of basic means for intellectual production in the Arab world. Even if they are available, they are not used as they should be. The clearest evidence is in the facts revealed by the present study concerning Egypt, Tunisia and Saudi Arabia.

Thirty five years ago Egypt was the first country in the Arab world to produce a national bibliography. The TNB has gained a good reputation among bibliographists.
The KSA has had a national library since 1388H (1968 AD), but it has not fulfilled its bibliographic functions as it should.

This study has revealed differences between the TNB and the ENB. The former has not achieved regular publication. Saudi bibliographical works have many overlaps and repetition of books mentioned even in the same work. The three countries show very little interest in government publications and this may be due to the fact that these need no control. There is also a lack in comprehensiveness in the coverage of authors' works outside the country.

Intellectual production as a whole tends to be in the humanities e.g. literature, religion and social sciences, more than arts, philosophy and pure sciences. There is little translation although it is badly needed.

There are also differences in bibliographical description and the application of the ISBN shown in this study. After a few years of publication, organisations settled on their most appropriate method, with differences in the application of classification and cataloguing in each bibliography.

If this is the case in the two Arab countries with the best bibliographies, what is the situation of the rest? This question is dealt with in Chapter 4, concerning the Arab Publications Bulletin, which is often late and subsequently loses its impact. The contribution of the Arab countries to this work is negligible. Even where countries have bibliographies there is no serious interest in providing lists on time.
Saudi Arabia has a high status among Arab and Islamic countries thanks to its financial capabilities and availability of skilled civil servants trained abroad. The Kingdom's policy in recent decades was to send students to developed countries such as USA, Britain, Germany and France to learn from these countries' experiences. Some students must pursue academic subjects and do MSc's and PhD's, others must be trained to satisfy needs in certain sectors where skill is required. The importance accorded to education is best displayed in the statistics shown in Chapter 3 of this study. The tables show the constant increase in the numbers of students from the primary to the University level.

Saudi Arabia produces a large number of religious publications because it contains the two holy shrines of Islam, and receives millions of pilgrims, year in year out. Its oil riches have made it possible to develop many sectors throughout the provinces of the Kingdom. Since the government is in the process of establishing a KFNL, those in charge should benefit from the experience of the countries which have the same characteristics. The national library aims at promoting Saudi intellectual production by the publication of a national bibliography. This bibliography should benefit particularly from the experience of Egypt and Tunisia. It is recommended that the Saudi public should help cooperate with the competent authorities to control book production.
As Barbara Bell said [15]:

"A current national bibliography is a mirror that reflects the culture, character and current interests of a country by listing its publishing output. Not only does it serve as an historical recorder but when distributed to other countries, it serves as a 'window' to that country".
REFERENCES


2. Ibid. pp 1-7 - 1-11.

3. Ibid. pp 1-12 - 1-14.

   - Ibid. pp 115-123.


SAMPLES
THE SOCIAL SCIENCES

Sociology
Social Structure
Marriage and Family
Cairo. University of Helwan-Faculty of Social Work. 5
ISBN 977 7264 17 8
H 42382 - 42383 320. 04

Mohamed Anwar El-Sadat, Pres.
A.R.E. (1918 - )
227. 18 cm.
ISBN 977 7264 17 8
H 42382 - 42383 320. 04

Mohamed Anwar El-Sadat, Pres.
A.R.E. (1918 - )
253, 20 cm.
ISBN 977 7264 18 6
H 34028 - 34029 320. 04

SAMPLE 1
SCIENCES SOCIALES

Sociologie.

175 SAMANDI (Zeineb)
Bibliogr.: p. 286-295
D.R.A.: socio.: Tunis: 1986
Broché. D.V. 6136/87
301.15.- Communautés (sociologie), Char El Melh, thèse.

Démométrie

176 HSAIRI (Mohamed)
Bibliogr. p. 149-154
Th.: méd.: Sfax : 1986
Broché. D.V. 5401/86
CHAPTER 9

SUMMARY AND RECOMMENDATIONS

9.1 SUMMARY

This study has described and analysed the state of bibliographical works in the Kingdom of Saudi Arabia, and National Bibliography in the Arab Republic of Egypt and the Republic of Tunisia. It has also studied the Arabic Bulletin of Publications and produced a short historical account of the development of bibliographical works and history of printing and publishing in the KSA. The following conclusions have been made:

1. The Kingdom of Saudi Arabia:

Although the Kingdom is experiencing a considerable development in the fields of education, literature, printing and publishing (Chapter 3), bibliographic services have not kept pace with this development. An example is that printing regulations were not effective in producing deposition of books etc. Moreover the bibliographies (Chapter 7), which were published were neither comprehensive nor accurate. They covered books only and had gaps in the bibliographic data. Government publications and periodicals are overlooked as there is no bibliographic means to cover them. There are also no guides or indexes which deal with the content of the numerous specialised periodicals.

There is also no form of bibliography which covers the audio visual items, atlases, maps, manuscripts, music and patents.
2. The Arab Republic of Egypt and the Republic of Tunisia

Having studied the TNB and the ENB (Chapters 5 and 6), it has become clear that there are differences between the two methods of organising the National Bibliography.

a) After 20 years of different frequencies of publication of the ENB, it settled on a quarterly with a cumulative index in the fourth issue of each year. The TNB on the other hand has not settled on a specific frequency even after 19 years of publication. It was, however, only published for the first time 15 years after the ENB.

b) Both bibliographies agree on the coverage of books, government publications, children's books, school books, academic theses and new periodicals, each in an independent section in the TNB.

c) Both bibliographies make no mention of books which are published by Egyptians and Tunisians outside those countries or books which take the country as a subject and are published outside the country.

d) In noting the increase of publications in the ENB, we take into account the population, the intellectual production and the high number of universities, and it is not improving as much as the TNB which is taking steps in the right direction.

The TNB covers different disciplines. This is due to the publishers' awareness of depositing the prescribed copies to protect their copyrights. There is also an increase in production of Arabic publications which used to be mostly in French.

252
e) Both bibliographies agree in their use of the ISBD Catalogue system, but differ in the classification systems. The TNB uses CDU and ENB uses DDC, although the retrospective TNB has used DDC. As far as the organisation of bibliography is concerned, there is an agreement in that both have Arabic and foreign sections. Each section is independent and each has publications of the commercial publishing houses, government publications, children's books, and school books. At the end of the TNB there is a list of academic theses and new periodicals. There are also indexes of authors, subjects, titles, publishers, and printers in both bibliographies.

f) In respect of accuracy and completeness of bibliographic data, both bibliographies agree on mentioning the author's name, the title of the book, the place of publication, the publisher, the date of publication, number of pages, number of volumes, name of series, number of books in the series and the price of the book. The ENB adds the order number of the book from the NBH, the serial number of the entry and, in some cases, the ISBN. This does not apply to school books, children's and young people's books, which are classified by simpler systems. The TNB adds the following data: type of binding, number and date of deposition of the book in the House and two letters to indicate whether the deposition was optional or compulsory.

g) As far as completeness of the bibliographic data is concerned, we notice that both bibliographies are equally effective in mentioning the place of publication, the publisher, and the ISBD. We notice that mentioning the number of the edition is not very
frequent in either of them. The price of the book has been mentioned in the TNB to a greater extent than in the ENB. The ISBN is not mentioned in the TNB but is mentioned in the ENB to a small extent.

In general the completeness of the bibliographic data in both the TNB and the ENB is not encouraging, although they both agree that a bibliography should be published by the National Library and contain all subjects.

h) We find that the depository laws of the two countries differ in number of copies to be deposited, the depositor, the date of deposition, and the fine in case of delay in deposition.

There is a lack of clarity in both the countries' laws about deposition of items other than books, such as music, maps, atlases, government publications and manuscripts.

In addition to considering the state of National Bibliography in Egypt, Tunisia and the wider Arab world, and relating this to ideas for a prospective National Bibliography in Saudi Arabia the international context has been considered.

The work of IFLA in UBC and later the UBCIM programme has been noted and related to the Saudi situation. Ultimately the SNB should be seen as part of a world network of bibliographic data, conforming to International Standards and using machine records and databases to achieve that aim.
9.2 RECOMMENDATIONS

9.2.1 National Library
After the royal approval of the upgrading of the King Fahd Library under construction to a National Library in the KSA on 6.5.1410 (5.12.1989) [1], in a cabinet session, it is now known that the Kingdom has a national library (the old 'National Library' did not really fulfil the vital functions which will be described below, see also 1.6.1.2). This new Library has important implications for the National Bibliography. Part of the recommendations should refer to the National Library in the following terms.

"The National Library in any country is the Library that is responsible for acquiring, collecting and preserving that country's literature". [2]

As well as conserving the country's literary heritage and acting as a national centre coordinating research, it should produce the nation's bibliographic data for the country itself and the rest of the world.

9.2.2 National Bibliography
The Saudi National Bibliographic Agency (i.e. the National Library) should be responsible for producing the authoritative bibliographic records of the country. It must control and disseminate bibliographic data for use on a national and international level.

It will be necessary to accept and use international standards for the bibliographic record so that it can be accepted by other countries and easily interpreted.
The National Library will need to be involved with such schemes as UNESCO's National Information System (NATIS), IFLA's programme for Universal Bibliographic Control (UBC) and Universal Availabilty of Publications (UAP). In fact the UBC and MARC are now integrated into what is known as the Programme for Universal Bibliographic Control and Information Management (UBCIM). It should be concerned with other projects related to UBC such as the International Serials Data System (ISDS), the International Standard Book Number (ISBN), the International Standard Bibliographic Descriptions (ISBD) - for monographs ISBD(m) and for Serials ISBD(s) and also National Machine Readable Cataloguing (MARC) programme.

In the more immediate region there is ALECSO's First Arab Bank of Information (FARABI) [3] which is still being set up but which has already translated six books into Arabic on different aspects of ISBD and published five of them up to now. It has also translated and published a book on DDC.

Other publications by FARABI are a Guide to Arabic Periodicals, guides to libraries and schools of library and information science in Arab Countries, and the Arab Bulletin of Publications (ABP).

Modern technology should be used in the compilation and services of the National Bibliography. This could be done by building up a national database which could include all Saudi intellectual production. The computer network could connect users from all provinces of the Kingdom to the database which could itself be linked to others abroad. The people in charge should benefit from the
American and British experience in the field of sophisticated databases and networks, such as in the Library of Congress and the British Library.

Saudi Arabia already has some high technology. As P.H.A. Cheffins' reported [4]:

"High technology is central to library development in the Gulf States and particularly in Saudi Arabia. Libraries of any size (at least libraries on a Western pattern) are relatively new and, with generous finance, are growing rapidly. This growth can only be accommodated by taking advantage of the latest technological developments."

In Saudi Arabia King Abdul Aziz City for Science and Technology (KACST) is in the forefront of such developments. To quote Cheffin [5] again:

"Automation was central to their operation and its scope and limitations were clearly understood. From the UBC point of view, two of the databases that SANCST (now KACST) were developing were particularly interesting; one consisted of articles about Saudi Arabia or of Saudi interest culled from other databases and consolidated as one of their own, the other consisted of an index of Saudi newspapers though as yet very few were included. In default of a national bibliography, these efforts are valuable first steps in the bibliographical control of Saudi publications".

The above comments were made about nine years ago. Since then much development has taken place and an up to date picture is given below.

In the KACST [6] there is the first computer network in the Arab world which connects central computers located in the academic and research
institutions in the Arab Gulf countries to facilitate exchange of information between scientists and researchers in the region. The network was established in May 1985. At the present time 11 Universities and research institutions in Kuwait and Saudi Arabia are connected to GULFNET.

There are also the following national databases produced by KACST:
1. Science and Technology Bibliographic Database (English)
2. Science and Technology Bibliographic Database (Arabic)
3. Manpower Database
4. Union List of Periodicals Database
5. Current Awareness Database
6. S&T Terminology Database
7. KACST Library Catalogue.

The Saudi National Library as National Bibliographic Agency should benefit from the technology and experience of KACST as well as from International bodies concerned with international bibliographic exchange and National Libraries with highly developed technology for bibliographical work (e.g. British Library and Library of Congress).

As noted above the Saudi National Bibliography needs to study and become involved in the IFLA's Universal Bibliographic Control and International MARC programme (UBCIM), the aims of which have been stated as being ...

"The exchange and use of compatible bibliographic records amongst libraries in general and national bibliographic agencies in particular". [7]
Already, as reported by P.R. Lewis [8], there is an international network in which magnetic tape versions of records in current national bibliographies are made available abroad. For instance, all the records in the British National Bibliography are now accessible to libraries in North America, Australasia and a number of European countries.

Having made such a recommendation we must realise that the systems and technology involved in the aims of UBC will always be subject to development. As W.D. Roberts states [9]:

"'This does not mean that the programme has fully attained its objective of universal (or international) bibliographic control - but I wonder if we will ever really be in a position to say that we have fully attained this objective (and even if we did attain it, would we realise that we had done so, or would there not always be those who wanted to refine bibliographic standards yet further?)'".

The SNB must be ready for the future - again as Lewis states [10] "The day of the published national bibliography is coming to an end and the day of the published national bibliography database will soon take its place". There are many ways in which bibliography can take advantage of technology. An example is the use of CD-ROM mentioned in Section 9.2.6.

9.2.3 Deposit Law

The current Saudi Deposit Law has been detailed in Chapter 8.2.8. As legal deposit is a vital step in the process of creating a National Bibliography, the deposit process should be made as easy and smooth as
possible. Therefore cooperation is necessary between King Fahd National Library and the Ministry of Information.

Cooperation should be as follows:

1. The Publication Administration should take 6 copies of every book before its circulation. Article 26 states that another 5 copies should be deposited with the National Library. The total then of books to be deposited will amount to 11. This number is quite high, considering that the total number of copies of printed books usually does not exceed 3000. The distribution of the copies which go to the Publication Administration is left to the discretion of the Administration. They may choose to keep them.

Printing is costly (especially as an import duty is imposed on paper [11]). In addition to this, distribution is not efficient. The Ulama (the clergy) and publishers only want 5 copies to be deposited free of charge. They consider that more than that would erode the benefits of deposition. Deposition should be made by the publisher as the surest and most practical means.

2. Only six copies should be required for deposition. One copy should be retained by the Publication Administration and the other 5 sent to the KFNL. The Publication Administration considers production control regarding content its only duty. One copy should be quite enough to check the content since it has already been cleared.
3. The 5 copies could be sent to Riyadh (KFNL) directly through the Publication Administration offices scattered throughout the Kingdom.

After subjecting the copies to the procedural process, KFNL should give each of the following a copy: KAU in Jeddah, KFUPM in the eastern province, to make accessibility easier to all researchers throughout the Kingdom. As the KFNL is in Riyadh in the Central Province, it is difficult for people who live in remote places in the Eastern or Western provinces to have access.

The reason given by the Administration for wanting copies first, is that if a publication is first deposited in the KFNL it may have irregularities which should have first been checked by the Publications Administration.

If a copy is put in circulation before deposition, it means that the publisher is offending against the depository law. This avoidance has happened in Egypt and Tunisia; it should not be allowed to happen in Saudi Arabia. Control should be applied right from the beginning.

Government publications are very useful information and provide basic help in studies pertaining to international affairs. They also give an accurate picture of the functions, services and activities of the country.

Despite the importance of government publications, it is very unfortunate that the 1982/1402 system for publications and publishing
and the 1990/1410 deposition regulations have not accounted for them in any form. The government bodies should therefore abide by the regulations of the publication system and should deposit five copies in the KFNL to show an example to commercial publishers.

Government agencies should also abide by the regulations of deposition. They should deposit the same number of copies required from individuals, directly to the KFNL.

Article 17 of the 1982/1402 system made it compulsory for Saudi authors publishing outside the Kingdom to deposit five copies in the National Library. The 1990/1410 regulations have kept deposition compulsory and kept the same number of copies. It would be useful if the period of deposition was specified.

Deposition should preferably be made after the publication has obtained the Publication Administration's clearance. This refers to books by Saudi authors only. The Administration is aware of every publication entering the Kingdom when it gives distribution clearance.

The same remarks made about government publications apply to the universities, colleges and higher education institutes. These are required to deposit one copy only. That is due to the fact that academic theses and dissertations are printed in a very limited number, often less than 10 copies. Deposit by universities should be enforced and not be seen as a favour as when UAQU presented 20 copies of academic theses to the KFNL [12].
It would be useful if the same rule as for theses and dissertations produced in Saudi Arabia could be applied to these publications produced by Saudi authors outside the Kingdom.

In connection with the need for legal deposit to properly establish the National Bibliography, Authors Rights should be mentioned. It is in an author's own interest to see that this book is deposited as this will give him legal protection.

The new law of author's rights protection issued on 18.5.1410H (15.1.1990 AD) [13] comprises seven chapters and includes 34 articles, (while the old system (Chapter 3) includes two articles only under the heading copyright). There is now precise control of compilations. The new law protects authors, author's rights, rights transfer and specifies the scope and period of protection. It also includes a chapter on penalties and their range. The old system had specified no penalties. Together with the new law we should take the following points into account:

1. Author's rights should be protected within the laws and systems in force, and the international agreements, particularly the revised Berne Convention for the protection of Literary and Artistic Works (KBC), concerning author's rights, and World Intellectual Property Organisation (WPO), concerning intellectual property. Subscriptions should be reviewed, especially now that new developing countries have joined recently.
2. The Arab agreement on author's rights protection, issued in Baghdad (1402H, 1981AD), should also be taken into consideration. Its main objective is to protect the literary, artistic and scientific rights of the author. It includes 33 articles under the following main headings: frame of protection, author's rights, freedom of compilation, author's rights transfer, compilation deposition, means of protecting the author's rights, registration, expiry and withdrawal. This was set up under the supervision of the ALECSO.

The new edition of author's rights shows the government's interest in the issues of publishing, printing and author's rights.

9.2.4 Coverage

It should cover all materials published in the KSA (after they have obtained the publication administration's clearance) either by Saudi nationals or expatriates living in the Kingdom. It should include works appearing outside the Kingdom. This is a basic step which will help produce a bibliography listing books about Saudi Arabia published by Saudi or non-Saudi authors in different languages outside the Kingdom. The cultural missions in the Saudi Embassies (cultural bureaux) can play a major role in obtaining and reporting these publications to the KFNl in Riyadh. They should obtain this information by following the national bibliographies in the various countries where the embassies are located.

In respect of Saudi literature published abroad it could be argued that this is not an appropriate subject for the National Bibliography.
Certainly in considering a country such as the UK, how could the National Bibliography collect every item that every British writer has published anywhere in the world? One could perhaps argue that the total production by Saudi authors in any part of the world is not very great and therefore could well be covered. Another possibility is that Saudi production from abroad could be recorded in a supplement to the National Bibliography.

It should also list all works by international agencies in the KSA, and periodicals when they change titles or are issued for the first time.

It should include all works of the above specifications regardless of the language of publication. All subjects should be included. The bibliography should have a date to start collection.

Major coverages for the National Bibliography are of the following:
- Books and booklets on sale in bookshops.
- Books and booklets published to be distributed free of charge.
- Maps and atlases
- Government publications
- Periodicals (including title changes, merging and splitting of periodicals)

Other types of publications include:
- Articles in newspapers and periodicals.
- Audio-visual materials.
- Reports
- Theses and imprints not yet published.
- Annuals
- Publications of magazines and newspapers, i.e. 'guides' or special features.
- Publishers and booksellers' guides.
- Artistic drawings and imprints.
- Guides of educational unions, institutes and libraries.

Apart from the more obvious items there are arguments about the inclusion of such materials for instance as films. In Saudi Arabia music (including printed music) and films in general are the concern of the Saudi Arabian Society for Culture and Arts. However, educational videos and films are the concern of the National Library.

It is interesting to note the list of items for 'essential', 'desirable', or 'useful' inclusion in a national bibliography, which Maurice B. Line [13] has suggested. He actually calls this a "tentative and personal suggestion concerning the coverage of current national bibliographies".

The major coverages noted above follow Line's list except in the case of printed music which is discussed above.

9.2.5 Organisation

The following recommendations of the Arabic book bibliographical conference on cataloguing, classification, subject headings and bibliography, concerning Arabic books, held in Riyadh from 24.11.73 to 1.12.73 (29.10.1396/7.11.1393H), are important to note.
1. The Arabic names by which authors are widely known should be used in entries of the Catalogue. For other Arabic names, the first name should be used.

2. There has been a lack of a cataloguing code for adoption by librarians of the Arab world. It would be best for the present to use ALECSO's Arabic translation of ISBD rules, until an Arab code has been developed.

3. It was suggested that a list of Arabic subject headings should be produced but for the time being general subject lists developed abroad and specialised libraries' Arabic lists should be used.

4. In classification, it is convenient and practical to adopt the widely-used DDC. The modifications introduced to Arabic and Islamic subjects should be regarded as useful. Because DDC is an internationally acknowledged scheme its use will help progress towards UBC.

Apart from the above recommendations in organising a bibliography there are other points for consideration.

Since the recommendations of the above conference there have been two in use in Saudi Arabia and other Arab countries. These are the Arabic subject heading lists Al-kazendar and Al-Swaydan. There are two foreign lists (Sears List of Subject Headings and the Library of Congress Subject Headings) which are also very useful.
Regarding the method of compilation, the publishers should be required to give accurately the following information on every publication: full name of the author, title, name of publisher, date and place of publication, price, edition series, size, margins, and number of deposition in the KFNK and ISBN.

In respect of computer based systems there have been two useful articles [14] concerning automated cataloguing (the MARC programme) and in particular the problems with Arabic script.

Bibliographical Description should be complete and accurate in that it should include all bibliographical information elements which are of reliable reference. It should be able to be checked adequately. For this reason, rules to regulate bibliographical description should be used such as ISBD, which should be adapted to Arabic items. Also publishers should be encouraged to join the ISBN Organisation and to include a catalogue card of the book before printing it.

Cataloguing in Publication (CIP) programmes are recommended. These are cooperation schemes where author, publisher, printer and the NB agency come together and the bibliographic record is prepared in the agency before publication. The advantages of CIP are simultaneous with Universal Availability of Publication (UAP) because the aim of UAP [15] is to ensure the widest possible availability of published materials.

The final format of the bibliography should be as detailed below. The introduction should lay out the details of the sources used in the
compilation, edition, coverage, classification, cataloguing, organisation, elements of bibliographical description and list of terms and abbreviations. This should be in accordance with the recommendations adopted by the Paris Conference of 1977 [16].

"9. Each printed issue should conform to the following:

- use of an international paper size (A4)
- clear and unambiguous layout and typography of cover and/or title page to include:
  - title of the bibliography
  - the period which the issue covers
  - place of publication
  - name of publisher
  - date of publication
  - ISSN in top right-hand corner
- verso of title page to include:
  - copyright information
  - cataloguing-in-publication entry
  - details of availability, price, details of printing
- introduction (in each quarterly issue at least)
- main body of text
- indices (cumulated annually) covering complementary arrangements to that of main text.

10. In the introduction should be included details stating:

- the basis for the records, for example records made from copies deposited in the National Library in accordance with legal deposit stipulations
- coverage, including exceptions
- frequency
- arrangement
- bibliographic and cataloguing tools used
- list of special terms used, with definitions and abbreviations.
- outline of classified arrangement (if used)
- outline of transliteration schemes (if used)
- description of filing system.

11. The current issues of the printed national bibliography should be arranged in a classified order in accordance with a stated internationally-used classification scheme, and the arrangement of cumulations should be decided at the discretion of the national bibliographic agency.

13. The national bibliographic agency should undertake responsibility for preparing the comprehensive bibliographic records of its national imprint and in so doing follow international cataloguing principles and adopt international bibliographic standards, specifically the ISBDs and international numbering systems such as ISBN or ISSN, should maintain an authority control system for national names, personal and corporate, and uniform titles, in accordance with international guidelines, and should consider the adoption of an internationally used classification scheme for the records."
9.2.6 Publication

Periods of publication are governed by many factors, among these are:

1. Size of publishing movement in the country: Chapter 7 demonstrates in Table 7.1 that the size of Saudi intellectual production cannot justify weekly or even monthly publications. Another factor is the large area of the Kingdom which makes it difficult for the publishers in remote places to come to Riyadh to make deposition. Thus it is often made late.

2. The power of the body publishing the Saudi National Bibliography (SNB). The publisher will be a government agency affiliated to the council of ministers. This status makes it more powerful than the commercial publishing houses or research centres.

3. Availability of financial resources: from the summary of Chapter 8 and the above point, it is clear that financial resources do not pose any obstacle to the publication of other various specialised bibliographies as well as the national bibliography.

From the above three points, the researcher concludes that the SNB should be quarterly with an annual cumulation and a five year cumulation which should be compiled in CD-ROM. To make it beneficial to all users, the publication should be regular and punctual.

This of course refers to the actual printed publications of the bibliography. With material collected as received on a database information could be available almost immediately. Up-to-date print outs could be supplied on request. Eventually as Saudi publication grows it may be necessary to increase the frequency of the printed publication itself.
Thus the whole database should be available on-line for day-to-day information, the data should be used to compile the printed version of the bibliography, and cumulative records should be maintained on CD-ROM.

Although the King Fahd National Library has been designated as the national bibliographic agency, until the construction of this Library is complete, there is a need for some institution provisionally to carry out the task of the National Library. The initiative should be taken by the Ministry of Information through its Publication Administration. It should compile a list of the books which were given a publication permit or a circulation permit in the Kingdom. This list should be used as a temporary bibliography. It should be bi-annual and made available at a nominal price to the people concerned such as the publishers, the universities and other government bodies.

Also to be considered is the desirability of a Retrospective National Bibliography (RNB). The first and foremost aim of this Bibliography in the Kingdom of Saudi Arabia should be the coverage and control of Saudi intellectual production in all its dimensions. This would make this production known to researchers in and outside the Kingdom. RNB should be a tool to help librarians choose and supply the appropriate information to researchers. It would be useful in providing cataloguing and classification. Moreover it would be a basis for a number of specialised bibliographical works devoted to one subject or discipline.
The RNB should provide data starting from the date of the first work published by a Saudi author up to the publication of the Current National Bibliography. If, for example, the RNB covers Saudi intellectual production since the first Saudi work published up to 1412 (1992), it should stop at 1991.

The sources of bibliography must not be confined to one library. For this reason, information should be sought from varied and numerous sources to achieve an accurate and comprehensive coverage. Another advantage of variation is reliability.

Among the sources to be consulted, there are catalogues and registers of the university libraries and other libraries which keep collections of certain types of books. There are also catalogues and registers of private libraries, guides to periodicals, guides to fairs, reviews of books in Saudi periodicals and certain bibliographical general and subject lists (cf Chapter 7). In addition, there are lists of governmental publications and university theses.

There are most important sources also from the Records and the Library of the Ministry of Information, Publication Administration. As has already been mentioned in Chapter 3, the Ministry of Information issues the official approval for every publication in the Kingdom and also takes six copies of every publication before it is allowed into circulation.
In order to produce an RNB, the following steps are suggested:

a) Books should be looked for in libraries, lists, registers or guides and should be ordered alphabetically in a file or list.

b) This file should go to each source in turn and new items should be added. If a book is found in two sources only one should be mentioned. Thus repetitions and wrong statistics would be avoided.

c) After all the sources in the Kingdom are checked, there should be research in other places such as India, Damascus, Cairo, Pakistan, Turkey, Lebanon etc, where Saudi authors have published their works. Libraries in these countries must have some catalogues which would be very useful.

The British National Bibliography, and the Library of Congress in the USA, should be checked for records of books published by Saudi authors in the past.

There are further items that the National Bibliography should publish. These include the subject bibliography, the specialised bibliography, the individual bibliography and others. This should not only be confined to books but should include periodicals entirely or partly. Examples of subject bibliographies would be those on medicine and history.

The Bibliography should also publish a Union Catalogue, which is a collection of cards of all books available in research libraries in the Kingdom, a publication guide of periodicals and newspapers, guide
of libraries, guide of publishers and booksellers, printing houses, and guide of Cultural and Scientific Centres and Institutes in the Kingdom.

After the recommendations made above a simple question arises. What could the SNB administration offer before publishing National Bibliography? In fact King Fahd Library has issued three serial books concerning publishing matters. Therefore the administration would be able to publish specialised subject bibliographies such as:

1. An annotated bibliography for the Saudi Arabian Men of letters, consisting of the work of such authors as Hamad Al-Jaser, Abdullah Ibn Khamis, Ahmad A. Attar...

2. An annotated Islamic bibliography, consisting of sections, each of which contains one Islamic subject; that is zakah (charity), sawm (fasting), Salah (prayer) covering thoroughly every book that is relevant to each subject.

The researcher believes such bibliographies are possible because the King Fahd Library long before it became the National Library, had qualitatively and quantitatively a huge selection of books.

9.2.7 Administrative Framework
Since the Department of National Bibliography (NB) is a part of the administration framework of the National Library, the NL, with its administration, should conduct all procedures concerning the book; for example, legal deposit, cataloguing, classifying etc. Thus the
Bibliographical Department should receive all the bibliographical information for each book, on an index card, which will be input data for the bibliographical department to computerise.

In order to achieve such a framework the administration needs the following staff:

1. Chief of Department:
   Qualifications:
   a) Master's degree in Library and Information Studies
   b) Wide experience in the publication of books in the country.
   Rank: 8
   Yearly salary: SR 70620.

1. Secretary:
   Qualifications:
   a) High secretarial Diploma
   b) Moderate competence and performance in the English language.
   Duties: All secretarial routines
   Rank: 5
   Yearly salary: SR 43080.

2. Bibliographers:
   Qualifications: BA in Library and Information Science.
   Duties: This position comes next in responsibility to the position of Head of Department.
   a) Organising, producing and distributing the bibliography; for example, arranging,
cataloguing according to the required classification, first name, surname, etc.

b) Organising special subject bibliographies.

Rank: 6
Yearly salary: SR 52920 (SR 105840).

1. Indexing Clerk:

Qualifications: BA in Library and Information Science.

Duties: Producing the different bibliographical indexes, such as author, subject, title, and publishers etc.

Rank: 6
Yearly salary: SR 52920.

1. Foreign Book Clerk:

Qualifications: a) BA in English language
b) Training in Library and Information Science.

Duties: Dealing with all the foreign books in the bibliography.

Rank: 6
Yearly salary: SR 52920.

1. Government Publication Clerk:

Qualifications: BA in Library and Information Science.

Duties: Organising government publications

Rank: 6
Yearly salary: SR 52920.
1. School, Children's and Young Books Clerk:
   Qualifications: BA in Library and Information Science.
   Duties: Organising books for school, children and young people.
   Rank: 6
   Yearly salary: SR 52920

2. Research and Development Clerks:
   Qualifications:
   a) BA in Library and Information Science.
   b) Training in research techniques, statistics and planning.
   Duties: Doing research, statistical and planning for the bibliography.
   Rank: 6
   Yearly salary: SR 52920 (SR 105840).

1. Administrative Clerk:
   Qualifications: BA in Public Administration.
   Duties: a) Applying administrative routines within the framework.
           b) Arranging and producing the annual budget.
   Rank: 6
   Yearly salary: SR 52920.

For such a framework the annual salary for 11 posts will be SR 537,060, which equals £76722.
Bearing in mind the foregoing framework, the following points are important:

1. Each administrative rank consists of ten steps.

2. The annual increment differs according to the rank, for example, the eighth rank's annual increment is SR 310 while the sixth's is SR 230 and the fifth's is SR 200 etc.

3. The procedure for the assignment in each rank is as follows:
   a) determining the rank
   b) determining the step, according to the required qualifications
   c) specification of rank and step in accordance with the qualifications possessed, and specification as to which step requires one year's experience or a six month advanced training course in the field.

4. 9% Superannuation.

This number of posts is calculated according to the findings of the researcher's study and according to present Saudi intellectual output. In addition, it should be possible to expand the number of employees and the departments according to the needs of the administration.

It should be noted in conclusion that the salaries stated are not taxable and therefore would represent a higher equivalent salary in other countries.

Also in comparison to a country such as the UK or USA, the size of the Bibliography and the extent of the work is much less. With the growth of Saudi literature in the future, the status of the staff in the National Bibliography department may well grow.
In order to avoid the mistakes and shortcomings which are taking place in both the oldest Arabic bibliography, ENB, and its later counterpart the TNB, and to achieve regularity and punctuality of SNB publication we should take in to consideration the up-to-date sophisticated technology in this field. Such technology and sophistication is to be found in the British Library, whose bibliography was established 40 years ago. Cooperation between the KFNL and the international expertise in this field, such as of the British Library, should be on two levels:

1. The administrative level, i.e. by having long, temporary, consultative contracts
2. The training level, i.e. by sending SNB clerks to the BL for training courses in bibliographical method

This to avoid employing clerks with no appropriate experience whose aim would be to derive advantage and experience from the SNB rather than benefit it.
REFERENCES


5. Ibid. p.425.


   -p.3.

   1/77/UBC/3, p.11-12.
REFERENCES

ABU ABDUL MAQSUD. Tarikh Al-Tiba'ah wa Al-Sahafa fi Al-Hijaz. (History of Printing and Journalism in Hijaz), Umm Al-Qura issue (14.12.1928), issue 211 (11.1.1929).


AL-NADWA Daily, issue 9384, Tuesday 7.5.1410H (5.12.1989 AD).


BOOKSELLER, Books recorded in December and total for January to December 1989, No. 4415, 3 August 1990.


FATUHY, Meri Abudi; Takweem Al-Marajea, Al arabiyah, Wal Al-Ajnabiyyah (Assessment of Arabic and Foreign References); Kuwait: representation pres.


289


OKAZ Daily, issue 8586, Monday 18.5.1410H (15.1.1990 AD).


HAWLIYAT Al-Maktaba't wa Al-Na'aluma't (Library and Information Periodical: a yearly magazine issued by the Library and Information Department), Vol. 1.  Riyadh: Muhammed Ibn Saud University, Faculty of Social Sciences, 1405-1406.

SA'ATI, Yahya.  Harakat Al-Ta'lif wa Al-Nashr fi Al-Mamlakah Al-Arabiyyah Al-Saudiyyah, 1390H Sha-ban 1399H.  (Writing and Publishing Movement in the KSA: Subject Bibliography, an analytical study 1390 Sha'ban 1399; Riyadh: Riyadh Literary Club, 1399H (1979 AD).


292


